2. Control

Chapter Chair Grahame Grieve

Kestral Computing Pty Ltd

Chapter Chair: and Editor: Anthony (Tony) Julian

Mayo Clinic

Chapter Chair Doug Pratt

Siemens Medical Solutions Health Services Corporation

Chapter Chair Scott Robertson

Kaiser Permanente

Chapter Chair Rene Spronk

HL7 The Netherlands

Vocabulary Facilitator Sandy Stuart

Kaiser Permanente

Conformance SIG Lisa Carnahan

co-chairs NIST

John Lyons

Siemens Medical Solutions

Frank Oemig

Agfa HealthCare GmbH

2.1 CHAPTER 2 CONTENTS

2.1	CHAPTER 2 CONTENTS	2-1
2.2	INTRODUCTION	2-3
2.3	CONCEPTUAL APPROACH	2
2.3.1	Trigger events	2-4
2.3.2	ACKNOWLEDGMENTS: ORIGINAL MODE	2-4
2.3.3		2-5
2.3.4	QUERIES	2-5
2.4	COMMUNICATIONS ENVIRONMENT	2-5
2.5 I	MESSAGE FRAMEWORK	2-0
2.5.1	Messages	2-6
2.5.2	SEGMENTS AND SEGMENT GROUPS	2-6
2.5.3		
2.5.4		
2.6 I	MESSAGE CONSTRUCTION RULES	2-12
2.6.1		
	10 V : 05400007 All : 14	

2.6.2	RULES FOR THE RECIPIENT	2-17
2.6.3	ENCODING RULES NOTES	2-17
2.7 U	USE OF ESCAPE SEQUENCES IN TEXT FIELDS	2-17
2.7.1	FORMATTING CODES	2-17
2.7.2	ESCAPE SEQUENCES SUPPORTING MULTIPLE CHARACTER SETS	
2.7.3	HIGHLIGHTING	
2.7.4	SPECIAL CHARACTER	
2.7.5	HEXADECIMAL	
	FORMATTED TEXT	
2.7.6 2.7.7	LOCAL	
2.8 V	VERSION COMPATIBILITY DEFINITION	
2.8.1	ADDING MESSAGES OR MESSAGE CONSTITUENTS	2-20
2.8.2	CHANGING MESSAGES OR MESSAGE CONSTITUENTS	
2.8.3	DEPRECATING MESSAGES OR MESSAGE CONSTITUENTS	
2.8.4	REMOVING MESSAGES OR MESSAGE CONSTITUENTS	
2.8.5	EARLY ADOPTION OF HL7 CHANGES	
2.8.5	TECHNICAL CORRECTION RULES	
	MESSAGE PROCESSING RULES	
2.9.1	MESSAGE INITIATION	
2.9.2	MESSAGE RESPONSE USING THE ORIGINAL PROCESSING RULES	
2.9.3	RESPONSE USING ENHANCED ACKNOWLEDGEMENT	
2.10 S	PECIAL HL7 PROTOCOLS	2-29
2.10.1	SEQUENCE NUMBER PROTOCOL	2-29
2.10.2	CONTINUATION MESSAGES AND SEGMENTS	2-30
2.10.3	HL7 BATCH PROTOCOL	2-34
2.10.4	MODES FOR UPDATING VIA REPEATING SEGMENTS	2-36
2.11 L	OCAL EXTENSION	2-37
2.11.1	MESSAGES	2-37
2.11.2	TRIGGER EVENTS	2-38
	SEGMENT GROUPS	
	SEGMENTS	
	DATA TYPES	
	TABLES	
2.12 C	CONFORMANCE USING MESSAGE PROFILES	2-40
2.12.1	MESSAGE PROFILE	2-43
2.12.2	USE CASE MODEL	2-43
2.12.3	DYNAMIC DEFINITION	2-44
	STATIC DEFINITION	
	Profile type	
	STATIC DEFINITION CONCEPTS.	
	STATIC DEFINITION CONCEPTS	
	STATIC DEFINITION - MESSAGE LEVEL	
	MESSAGE PROFILE DOCUMENT	
	CHAPTER FORMATS FOR DEFINING HL7 MESSAGES	
	MESSAGE REPRESENTATION	
4.13.4	TIL / ADSTRACT MESSAUE STNTAA EAAMPLE	

2.14	ACKNOWLEDGMENT MESSAGES	2-61
2.14	1 ACK - GENERAL ACKNOWLEDGMENT	2-61
2.14	A.2 MCF - DELAYED ACKNOWLEDGMENT	2-61
2.15	MESSAGE CONTROL SEGMENTS	2-61
2.15	5.1 ADD - ADDENDUM SEGMENT	2-62
2.15	5.2 BHS - BATCH HEADER SEGMENT	2-63
2.15	5.3 BTS - BATCH TRAILER SEGMENT	2-64
2.15	5.4 DSC - CONTINUATION POINTER SEGMENT	2-65
2.15	5.5 ERR - ERROR SEGMENT	2-66
2.15	5.6 FHS - FILE HEADER SEGMENT	2-71
2.15	5.7 FTS - FILE TRAILER SEGMENT	2-72
2.15	5.8 MSA - MESSAGE ACKNOWLEDGMENT SEGMENT	2-73
2.15	5.9 MSH - MESSAGE HEADER SEGMENT	2-74
2.15	5.10 NTE - NOTES AND COMMENTS SEGMENT	2-82
2.15	5.11 OVR – OVERRIDE SEGMENT	2-84
2.15	5.12 SFT – SOFTWARE SEGMENT	2-87
2.16	DATA TYPES	2-89
2.17	MISCELLANEOUS HL7 TABLES USED ACROSS ALL CHAPTERS	2 03
	7.1 MESSAGE TYPE TABLE	
	2.2 EVENT TYPE TABLE	
	7.3 MESSAGE STRUCTURE TABLE	
	7.4 CODING SYSTEM TABLE	
	7.5 YES/NO INDICATOR TABLE	
2.17	7.6 EXPANDED YES/NO INDICATOR TABLE	
2.18	SAMPLE CONTROL MESSAGES	2-112
2.18	3.1 GENERAL ACKNOWLEDGMENT	2-112
2.18	3.2 GENERAL ACKNOWLEDGEMENT, ERROR RETURN	2-112
2.18	3.3 Message using sequence number: protocol	2-113
2.18	3.4 Message fragmentation	2-113
2.18	3.5 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT MESSAGE USING ORIGINAL MODE PROCESSING	2-116
2.18	8.6 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT MESSAGE USING ENHANCED MODE PROCESSING	2-117
2.19	MESSAGE PROFILE DOCUMENT DEFINITION	2-117
2.19	0.1 Message profile schema	2-118
	0.2 Message profile DTD	
2 20	OUTSTANDING ISSUES	2-129

2.2 INTRODUCTION

The Control chapter of this Standard defines the generic rules that apply to all messages. Subsequent sections define functionally specific messages to be exchanged among certain applications. The specific aspects of message definition that are addressed herein are:

- a) the form to be used in functional chapters for describing messages. This includes their purpose, their contents, and the interrelationships among them. This form is called an abstract message definition because it is purely a level 7 (application) definition.
- b) the HL7 encoding rules for converting an abstract message into a string of characters that

comprises an actual message.

- c) the programming procedures required to exchange messages using the HL7 specifications
- d) the anticipated relationship with lower level protocols.
- e) certain message segments that are components of all messages.
- f) a single message, the acknowledgment message, that may be used unchanged in multiple applications.

2.3 CONCEPTUAL APPROACH

2.3.1 Trigger events

The Standard is written from the assumption that an event in the real world of healthcare creates the need for data to flow among systems. The real-world event is called the **trigger event**. For example, the trigger event **a patient is admitted** may cause the need for data about that patient to be sent to a number of other systems. The trigger event, **an observation (e.g., a CBC result) for a patient is available,** may cause the need for that observation to be sent to a number of other systems. When the transfer of information is initiated by the application system that deals with the triggering event, the transaction is termed an **unsolicited update**.

Note: No assumption is made about the design or architecture of the application system creating the unsolicited update. The scope of HL7 is restricted to the specification of messages between application systems and the events triggering them.

HL7 allows the use of trigger events at several different levels of data granularity and inter-relationships. For example, most Patient Administration (ADT) trigger events concern single objects (such as an admit event, which creates a message that contains data about a single person and/or account). Other ADT trigger events are concerned with relationships between more than one object (e.g., the merge events, which specify patient or account merges). Some ADT trigger events pertain to a collection of objects that may have no significant inter-relationships (e.g., a record-oriented location-based query, whose response contains data about a collection of inpatients who are related only temporarily, by local geography).

2.3.2 Acknowledgments: original mode

When the unsolicited update is sent from one system to another, this acknowledgment mode specifies that it be acknowledged at the application level. The reasoning is that it is not sufficient to know that the underlying communications system guaranteed delivery of the message. It is also necessary to know that the receiving application processed the data successfully at a logical application level.

The acknowledgment may contain data of interest to the system that initiated the exchange. For example, if a patient care system has processed the trigger event **a lab test is ordered for a patient**, it may send an unsolicited update to a lab application identifying the patient, the test ordered, and various other information about the order. The ancillary system will acknowledge the order when it has processed it successfully. For some pairings of patient care and ancillary department systems the acknowledgment may also include the ancillary identification number that was assigned (HL7 does not require Order Entry and Results Reporting applications to interface in this manner, but it supports those that do).

The HL7 Standard makes no assumptions about the ownership of data. It also makes no requirements of its own on the subsequent action of the recipient of data, nor does it make any assumption about the design or architecture of the receiving application system. The scope of HL7 is restricted to the specification of messages between application systems, and the events triggering them. HL7 does not explicitly support, but

Page 2-4

can be used with, systems that support store and forward and data broadcast facilities (see the HL7 Implementation Support Guide).

The HL7 Standard makes no functional interpretation of the requirement that a system commit the data in a message to its database before acknowledging it. All that is required is that the receiving system accept responsibility for the data, providing the same integrity test that it would apply to data from any source. To continue the prior example, the ancillary system may acknowledge the order after placing it in an input queue, expecting to fully process the order into its database at a future time. The only assumption is that the input queue is maintained at the same level of integrity as the database.

2.3.3 Acknowledgments: enhanced mode

The HL7 acknowledgment paradigm has been extended to distinguish both accept and application acknowledgments, as well the conditions under which each is required. With a positive accept acknowledgment, the receiving system commits the message to safe storage in a manner that releases the sending system from the need to resend the message. After the message has been processed by the receiving system, an application acknowledgment may be used to return the resultant status to the sending system.

2.3.4 Queries

Query documentation including messages, segments, special protocols, implementation considerations and examples have been moved to chapter 5. The unsolicited display messages were also moved because their message syntax is query-like in nature.

2.4 COMMUNICATIONS ENVIRONMENT

The HL7 Standard defines the messages as they are exchanged among application entities and the procedures used to exchange them. As such, it conceptually operates at the seventh level of the ISO model for Open System Interconnection (OSI). It is primarily concerned with the data content and interrelationship of messages and with communicating certain application-level error conditions.

Since the OSI protocols are not universally implemented, the HL7 Working Group is interested in providing standards that will be useful in the interim. It is also recognized that there is now, and will continue to be, interest in communicating health data among systems operating in communications environments that provide a high level of functionality, but use protocols other than ISO OSI. The universe of environments of interest to HL7 includes, but is not restricted to:

- a) ad hoc environments that do not provide even basic transport reliability. Such environments consist of point-to-point RS-232 links, modems, and even LANs, if their connection to host computers is made via RS-232 communications links. Until OSI high level standards become truly prevalent, many healthcare interfaces will be implemented over such links. In such an environment, the HL7 Lower Level Protocols (LLP) may be used between systems to enhance the capabilities of the communications environment. The HL7 Lower Level Protocols are defined in the HL7 Implementation Guide, which is not an official part of the Standard.
- b) environments that support a robust transport level, but do not meet the high level requirements. This includes environments such as TCP/IP, DECNET, and SNA.
- c) ISO and proprietary networks that implement up to presentation and other high level services. IBM's SNA LU6.2 and SUN Microsystems's NFS are examples of complete proprietary networks.
- d) two or more applications running on the same physical and/or logical machine that are not tightly integrated. In these environments, the messaging capabilities may be provided by inter-process communications services (e.g., Pipes in a UNIX System).

The HL7 Standard assumes that the communications environment will provide the following capabilities:

- a) error free transmission. Applications can assume that they correctly received all of the transmitted bytes in the order in which they were sent. This implies that error checking is done at a lower level. However, sending applications may not assume that the message was actually received without receiving an acknowledgment message.
- b) character conversion. If the two machines exchanging data use different representations of the same character set, the communications environment will convert the data from one representation to the other.
- c) message length. HL7 sets no limits on the maximum size of HL7 messages. The Standard assumes that the communications environment can transport messages of any length that might be necessary. In practice, sites may agree to place some upper bound on the size of messages and may use the message continuation protocol, described later in this chapter, for messages that exceed the upper limit.

Note: Just as HL7 makes no assumptions about the design or architecture of the application systems sending and receiving HL7 messages, it makes no assumptions about the communications environment beyond those listed above. In particular, aside from the above assumptions, the communications environment, including its architecture, design and implementation, is outside the scope of HL7.

2.5 MESSAGE FRAMEWORK

This section defines the constituents of messages and provides the methodology for defining abstract messages that are used in later chapters. Message construction rules can be found in section 2.6.

2.5.1 Messages

A **message** is the atomic unit of data transferred between systems. It is comprised of a group of segments in a defined sequence. Each message has a **message type** that defines its purpose. For example the ADT Message type is used to transmit portions of a patient's Patient Administration (ADT) data from one system to another. A three-character code contained within each message identifies its type. These are listed in the Message Type list, Appendix A.

The real-world event that initiates an exchange of messages is called a trigger event. See Section 2.3.1, "Trigger events," for a more detailed description of trigger events. Refer to HL7 Table 0003 – Event type for a listing of all defined trigger events. These codes represent values such as **A patient is admitted** or **An order event occurred**. There is a one-to-many relationship between message types and trigger event codes. The same trigger event code may not be associated with more than one message type; however a message type may be associated with more than one trigger event code.

All message types and trigger event codes beginning with the letter "Z" are reserved for locally defined messages. No such codes will be defined within the HL7 Standard.

2.5.2 Segments and segment groups

A **segment** is a logical grouping of data fields. Segments of a message may be required or optional. They may occur only once in a message or they may be allowed to repeat. Each segment is given a name. For example, the ADT message may contain the following segments: Message Header (MSH), Event Type (EVN), Patient ID (PID), and Patient Visit (PV1).

Each segment is identified by a unique three-character code known as the Segment ID. Although the actual segments are defined in various chapters, the ID codes assigned to the various segments are listed in Appendix A.

All segment ID codes beginning with the letter **Z** are reserved for locally defined segments. No such codes will be defined within the HL7 Standard.

Two or more segments may be organized as a logical unit called a segment group. A segment group may be required or optional and might or might not repeat. As of v 2.5, the first segment in a newly defined segment group will be required to help ensure that unparsable messages will not be inadvertently defined.

A segment group is assigned a name that represents a permanent identifier that may not be changed.

A named segment X may occur more than once in an abstract message syntax. This differs from repetition described earlier in this section. When this occurs, the following rules must be adhered to:

If, within an abstract message syntax, a named segment X appears in two individual or group locations, and

- a) Either appearance is optional or repeating in an individual location;
- b) or, either appearance is optional or repeating, in a group location

then, the occurrences of segment X must be separated by at least one required segment of a different name so that no ambiguity can exist as to the individual or group location of any occurrence of segment X in a message instance.

Examples of proper segment grouping				
Example 1	Example 2	Example 3		
{ SEG 1}	[SEG1]	SEG1		
SEG2	{	[SEG2]		
[SEG1]	SEG2	SEG3		
	[SEG1]	{ SEG1 }		
	}			

Examples of proper segment grouping

Examples of unparsable segment grouping

Example 1	Example 2	Example 3	Example 4
{ SEG 1}	{ SEG1 }	[SEG1]	{ SEG1 }
[SEG1]	[SEG2]	{	[SEG2
	SEG1	[SEG2]	SEG3]
		SEG1	SEG1
		SEG3	
		}	

In each of these examples it is not possible to tell which part of the message SEG1 belongs.

2.5.3 Fields

Definition: A field is a string of characters. Fields for use within HL7 segments are defined by HL7. A comprehensive data dictionary of all HL7 fields is provided in Appendix A.

HL7 does not care how systems actually store data within an application. When fields are transmitted, they are sent as character strings. Except where noted, HL7 data fields may take on the null value. Sending the null value, which is transmitted as two double quote marks (""), is different from omitting an optional data field. The difference appears when the contents of a message will be used to update a record in a database

rather than create a new one. If no value is sent, (i.e., it is omitted) the old value should remain unchanged. If the null value is sent, the old value should be changed to null. For further details, see Section 2.6, "Message construction rules".

Version control rules regarding fields can be found in section 2.8, "Version compatibility definition".

Local extension rules regarding fields can be found in section 2.11, "Local Extension".

The various chapters of the Standard contain segment attribute tables. These tables list and describe the data fields in the segment and characteristics of their usage. In defining a segment, the following information is specified about each field:

2.5.3.1 Position (sequence within the segment)

Definition: Ordinal position of the data field within the segment. This number is used to refer to the data field in the text comments that follow the segment definition table.

In the segment attribute tables this information is provided in the column labeled **SEQ**.

2.5.3.2 Maximum length

Definition: Maximum number of characters that one occurrence of the data field may occupy.

In the segment attribute tables this information is in a column labeled LEN.

The maximum length is not of conceptual importance in the abstract message or the HL7 coding rules. The length of a field is normative. Changes to the field length may be negotiated by a site agreement such as a conformance profile. See section, 2.12, "Conformance Using Message Profiles". When this is done, it shall not render the implementation non-conformant. The receiver must be able to receive up to the maximum field length, and the sender can send up to the maximum field length.

Field length is determined based on the data type lengths, and should fall between the lower and the upper bounds for the corresponding data types. It is calculated to include the component and subcomponent separators. Because the maximum length is that of a single occurrence, the repetition separator is not included in calculating the maximum length See Section 2.5.3.5, "Repetition".

The following conventions have been applied:

- a) The maximum length of the data field shall be expressed as a number.
- b) If the maximum length needs to convey the notion of a Very Large Number, the number 65536 should be displayed to alert the user. This convention takes the place of the practice in versions prior to 2.4 of abbreviating this expression as 64K.
- c) If the maximum length cannot be definitively expressed because the data type for the field is variable, the symbolic number 99999 should be displayed. This convention takes the place of the practice in versions prior to 2.4 of displaying the notation "varies" or some other non-numeric description.

In v 2.5 maximum lengths are being assigned to data types. See *HL7 Table 0440 - Data Types*.

2.5.3.3 Data type

Definition: The basic building block used to construct or restrict the contents of a data field.

In the segment attribute tables this information is provided in the column labeled **DT**. If the data type of the field is variable, the notation "varies" will be displayed.

There are a number of data types defined by HL7. See section 2.16, "Data types"

2.5.3.4 Optionality

Definition: Whether the field is required, optional, or conditional in a segment.

In the segment attribute tables this information is provided in the column labeled **OPT**.

The designations for optionality are:

R - required

O - optional

C - conditional on the trigger event or on some other field(s). The field definitions following the segment attribute table should specify the algorithm that defines the conditionality for this field.

X - not used with this trigger event

B - left in for backward compatibility with previous versions of HL7. The field definitions following the segment attribute table should denote the optionality of the field for prior versions.

W - withdrawn

Note: For Versions 2.3 and higher: the optionality of fields should be explicitly documented in the segment field definitions that follow each segment definition table; if the optionality of fields within a segment changes depending on the trigger event, that optionality should also be explicitly documented.

For version 2.5 and higher, the optionality, table references, and lengths of data type components are supplied in component tables of the data type definition. The component definitions that follow the component table will elaborate on the optionality and table references. Where needed, additional detailed field definitions will follow the formal segment attribute tables. (See also Sections 2.5.4, "Message delimiters," 2.6, "Message construction rules," 2.16, "Data types").

2.5.3.5 Repetition

Definition: Whether the field may repeat. The value that appears in the repetitions column is the maximum number of allowed occurrences, e.g., a value of '3' would mean that the field can have '3 occurrences'; if unspecified, there is only one occurrence, i.e. cannot repeat.

In the segment attribute tables this information is provided in the column labeled **RP**/#.

The designations for Repetition are:

N or blank - no repetition

Y - the field may repeat an indefinite or site-determined number of times

(integer) - the field may repeat up to the number of times specified by the integer

Each occurrence may contain the number of characters specified by the field's maximum length. See Section 2.5.3.2, "Maximum length".

Usage Note: For improved readability some technical committees opt to leave the Repetition fields blank to indicate that the field may NOT repeat. A blank may NOT be construed to mean that the field may optionally repeat.

As of v2.5 the Repetition column is to be left blank if the field may NOT repeat.

2.5.3.6 Table

Definition: The table attribute of the data field definition specifies the HL7 identifier for a set of coded values.

In the segment attribute tables, the table identifier is provided in the column labeled **TBL#.** If this attribute is not valued or blank, there is not a table of values defined for the field.

A number of conventions have been applied to this attribute of the data field definition.

- a) If more than one table is applicable, the format xxxx/yyyy will be used to so designate multiple tables. Details on multiple tables will be specified in field or data type notes.
- b) If the field is of data type ID or IS a table number will be allocated even if, in the case of IS, there may be a notation "No Suggested values".
- c) If the field is of data type CE, CF, CNE or CWE and one or more externally or locally defined tables may be used, the symbolic number 9999 will appear in the column. This is to indicate that table values are used, but no HL7/User-defined table can be allocated. The narrative may constrain which external tables can be used.
- d) Tables embedded in field components or subcomponents will not be cited in the attribute column.
 - 1) Tables embedded in data types are defined, save for the exceptions in point 2 below, in the data type's component table in section 2.A Data Types. They may, however, be constrained in the field note section. The field note definition supercedes the definition in the data type section.
 - 2) Tables embedded in fields with a data type of CE, CF, CNE, or CWE are only defined in the field notes section.
- e) Values for HL7 tables shall not contain the embedded "suggested delimiters" delineated in section, 2.5.4, "Message delimiters".

HL7 defines table values in 3 ways: HL7 defined, user-defined and externally defined.

User-defined Tables: A user-defined table is a set of values that are locally or site defined. This accommodates certain fields, like *PV1-3 - Assigned patient location*, that will have values that vary from institution to institution. Even though these tables are not defined in the Standard, they are given a user-defined table number to facilitate implementations. HL7 sometimes publishes suggested values that a site may use as a starter set (e.g., *table 0001- Sex*). The IS data type is often used to encode values for these tables. Note that some of these tables (e.g., *table 0302 - Point of care*) may reference common master files.

There are some user-defined tables that contain values that might be standardized across institutions but for which no applicable official standard exists. For these a set of **suggested** values may be listed in Appendix A. These suggested values appear in the text in a standard box format (e.g., HL7 *Table 0062 - Event Reason* in Section 3.4.1.4, "Event reason code"). It is recommended that these values be used where applicable within an institution and serve as a basis for extensions as required. These values may, however, be redefined locally. The appropriate functional committee within HL7 solicits suggestions for additional values from institutions that are applying the Standard.

HL7 Tables: An HL7 table is a set of values defined and published by HL7. They are a part of the HL7 Standard because they affect the interpretation of the messages that contain them. These values may not be redefined locally; however, the table itself may be extended to accommodate locally defined values. This is particularly applicable in the case of *HL7 table 0003 – Event Type*. The ID data type is most often used to encode values for HL7 tables. The values are listed in Appendix A. These HL7 tables also appear in the text in a standard box format (e.g., *HL7 table 0003 Event Type*).

External Tables: An external table is a set of coded values defined and published by another standards organization. External tables are used to populate fields like *FT1-19-Diagnosis Code - FT1*. Another example, the encoding of clinical observations using LOINC codes. The CE CF, CNE and CWE data type are used to represent values for these fields.

External tables arise from applications where the concepts and possibly the codes are established by external agencies due to regulatory requirements or agreements between HL7 and other Standards Developing Organizations. They may be published by HL7 on behalf of other organizations. Their contents are not subject to approval by HL7 ballot. Such tables will be published with HL7 Standards. However, they may be updated more frequently than HL7 Standards.

An external table may be imported into the HL7 standard subject to specific license or copyright requirements of the supplier/author. In this case the table will be an HL7-defined table. HL7 users will need to abide by the licensing and copyright requirements of the source when applicable.

The data type for the field will be CWE if 1) other tables are allowed in the field **or** 2) the external table may be locally extended **or** 3) when the code may be replaced by local text.

The data type for the field will be CNE if 1) no other table is allowed in the field **and** 2) the external table may **not** be locally extended **and** 3) text may not replace the code. A CNE field must have an HL7 defined or external table associated with it. It must be specified in the standard.

Local Tables: A local table is a table with a non-HL7 assigned table identifier and which contains a set of locally or site defined values. It may be locally assigned to local fields in Z segments or to HL7 fields having a CWE data type.

2.5.3.7 ID number

Definition: a small integer that uniquely identifies the data item throughout the Standard. In the segment definition this information is provided in the column labeled **ITEM** #.

2.5.3.8 Name

Definition: Descriptive name for the data item. In the segment attribute tables this information is provided in the column labeled **ELEMENT NAME**.

When the same name is used in more than one segment, it must have the same data type and semantic meaning in each segment as well as the same ID number. To deal with any ambiguities arising from this convention, whenever a field is referenced herein, the segment name and position must always be included.

2.5.4 Message delimiters

In constructing a message, certain special characters are used. They are the segment terminator, the field separator, the component separator, subcomponent separator, repetition separator, and escape character. The segment terminator is always a carriage return (in ASCII, a hex 0D). The other delimiters are defined in the MSH segment, with the field delimiter in the 4th character position, and the other delimiters occurring as in the field called Encoding Characters, which is the first field after the segment ID. The delimiter values used in the MSH segment are the delimiter values used throughout the entire message. In the absence of other considerations, HL7 recommends the suggested values found in Figure 2-1 delimiter values.

At any given site, the subset of the possible delimiters may be limited by negotiations between applications. This implies that the receiving applications will use the agreed upon delimiters, as they appear in the Message Header segment (MSH), to parse the message.

Note: The binary representation of the delimiter characters will vary with the character set used in the message.

Figure 2-1. Delimiter values

Delimiter	Suggested Value	Encoding Character Position	Usage
Segment Terminator	<cr></cr>	-	Terminates a segment record. This value cannot be changed by implementers.
Field Separator	_	•	Separates two adjacent data fields within a segment. It also separates the segment ID from the first data field in each segment.
Component Separator	۸	1	Separates adjacent components of data fields where allowed.
Subcomponent Separator	&	4	Separates adjacent subcomponents of data fields where allowed. If there are no subcomponents, this character may be omitted.
Repetition Separator	~	2	Separates multiple occurrences of a field where allowed.
Escape Character	1	3	Escape character for use with any field represented by an ST, TX or FT data type, or for use with the data (fourth) component of the ED data type. If no escape characters are used in a message, this character may be omitted. However, it must be present if subcomponents are used in the message.

2.6 MESSAGE CONSTRUCTION RULES

Note: These message construction rules define the standard HL7 encoding rules, creating variable length delimited messages. Although only one set of encoding rules has been defined as a standard since HL7 Version 2.3, other encoding rules are possible (but since they are non-standard, they may only be used by a site-specific agreement).

2.6.1 Rules for the sender

2.6.1.1 Message Construction Pseudocode

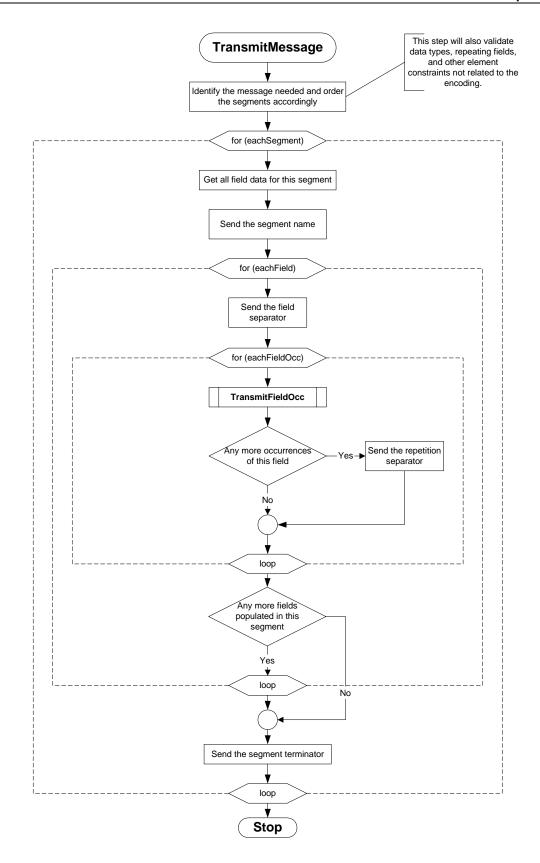
```
/* gather occurrences (may be multiple only for fields that are allowed to repeat */
     foreach occurrence in ( occurrences_of( field ) ) {
       transmit_occurrence( occurrence );
       if not last (populated occurrence) print repetition_separator; /* e.g., ~ */
     }
     break if last (populated field);
   }
                                                      /* always<cr>! */
   print segment_terminator;
 }
 return;
}
procedure transmit_occurrence (occurrence) {
 /* gather populated components */
 foreach component in ( components_of( occurrence ) ) {
   get_subcomponent_data( component );
   /* gather all data for subcomponents */
   foreach subcomponent in ( subcomponents_of( component ) ) {
     /* escape the field separator */
     substitute(field_separator,
                                    \F\ );
     /* escape the encoding characters */
     substitute( component_separator, \S\ );
     substitute( repetition_separator, \R\ );
     substitute( escape_character,
                                      \E\ );
     substitute( subcomponent_separator, \T\ );
     print subcomponent;
     if not last (populated subcomponent) print subcomponent separator; /* e.g., & */
   }
   if not last (populated component) print component_separator;
                                                                         /* e.g., ^ */
 }
```

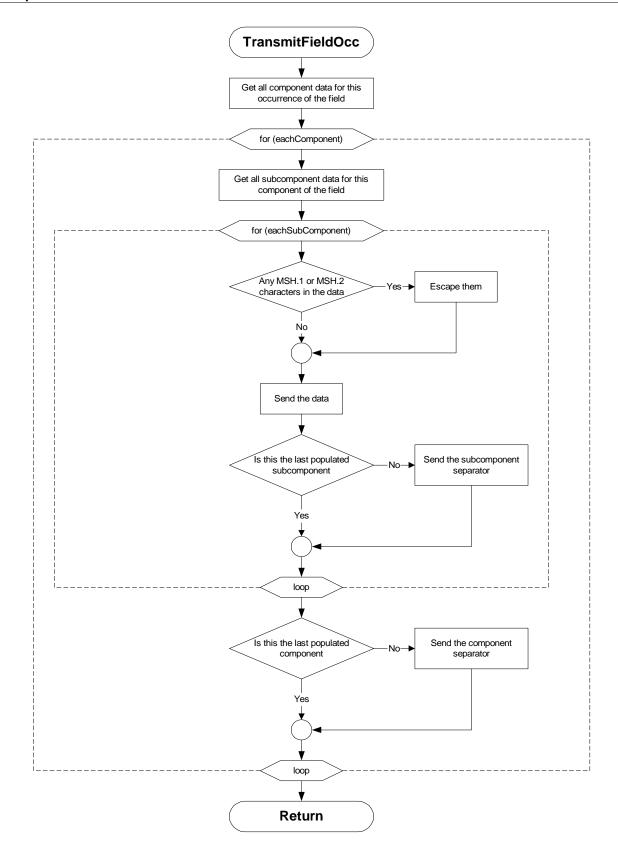
Chapter 2: Control

return;			
}			

2.6.1.2 Message Construction Flow Chart

The flow charts on the following pages represent another view of the message construction rules. The first shows the rules for transmitting a message; the second shows transmitting field occurrences.





April 2007.

2.6.2 Rules for the recipient

The following rules apply to receiving HL7 messages and converting their contents to data values:

- a) ignore segments, fields, components, subcomponents, and extra repetitions of a field that are present but were not expected.
- treat segments that were expected but are not present as consisting entirely of fields that are not present.
- c) treat fields and components that are expected but were not included in a segment as not present.

2.6.3 Encoding rules notes

If a segment is to be continued across messages, use the extended encoding rules. These rules are defined in terms of the more general message continuation protocol (see Section 2.10.2, "Continuation messages and segments").

2.7 USE OF ESCAPE SEQUENCES IN TEXT FIELDS

2.7.1 Formatting codes

When a field of type TX, FT, or CF is being encoded, the escape character may be used to signal certain special characteristics of portions of the text field. The escape character is whatever display ASCII character is specified in the <escape character> component of *MSH-2-encoding characters*. For purposes of this section, the character \ will be used to represent the character so designated in a message. An **escape sequence** consists of the escape character followed by an escape code ID of one character, zero (0) or more data characters, and another occurrence of the escape character.

The **escape sequences** for field separator, component separator, subcomponent separator, repetition separator, and escape character are also valid within an ST data field.

The following escape sequences are defined:

\H\	start highlighting
\ N \	normal text (end highlighting)
\F\	field separator
\ S \	component separator
\T\	subcomponent separator
\R\	repetition separator
\E\	escape character
$\backslash Xdddd \backslash$	hexadecimal data
\Zdddd\	locally defined escape sequence

No escape sequence may contain a nested escape sequence.

2.7.2 Escape sequences supporting multiple character sets

The following HL7 escape sequences are defined to support multiple character sets for fields, components and sub-components that are defined as data types FT, ST, and TX. They allow HL7 parsers to use escape codes (defined in the standards used below), without breaking, and without being non-conformant to the HL7 escape paradigm defined in this section.

Health Level Seven, Version 2.5.1 © 2007. All rights reserved

\Cxxyy\ single-byte character set escape sequence with two hexadecimal values, xx and yy, that indicate the escape sequence defined for one of the character repertoires

supported for the current message (i.e., ISO-IR xxx).

 $\Mxxyyzz\$ multi-byte character set escape sequence with three hexadecimal values, xx, yy and zz. zz is optional.

Common character set escape sequences include the following which are defined in the standards mentioned:

Single-byte character sets:

\C2842\	ISO-IR6 G0 (ISO 646 : ASCII)
\C2D41\	ISO-IR100 (ISO 8859 : Latin Alphabet 1)
\C2D42\	ISO-IR101 (ISO 8859 : Latin Alphabet 2)
\C2D43\	ISO-IR109 (ISO 8859 : Latin Alphabet 3)
\C2D44\	ISO-IR110 (ISO 8859 : Latin Alphabet 4)
\C2D4C\	ISO-IR144 (ISO 8859 : Cyrillic)
\C2D47\	ISO-IR127 (ISO 8859 : Arabic)
\C2D46\	ISO-IR126 (ISO 8859 : Greek)
\C2D48\	ISO-IR138 (ISO 8859 : Hebrew)
\C2D4D\	ISO-IR148 (ISO 8859 : Latin Alphabet 5)
\C284A\	ISO-IR14 (JIS X 0201 -1976: Romaji)
\C2949\	ISO-IR13 (JIS X 0201 : Katakana)

Multi-byte codes:

\M2442\ ISO-IR87 (JIS X 0208 : Kanji, hiragana and katakana)
\M242844\ ISO-IR159 (JIS X 0212 : Supplementary Kanji)

2.7.3 Highlighting

In designating highlighting, the sending application is indicating that the characters that follow somehow should be made to stand out, but leaving the method of doing so to the receiving application. Depending on device characteristics and application style considerations, the receiving application may choose reverse video, boldface, underlining, blink, an alternate color or another means of highlighting the displayed data. For example the message fragment:

```
DSP TOTAL CHOLESTEROL \H\240*\N\ [90 - 200]
```

might cause the following data to appear on a screen or report:

```
TOTAL CHOLESTEROL 240* [90 - 200]
```

whereas another system may choose to show the 240* in red.

2.7.4 Special character

The special character escape sequences ($\F\setminus, \S\setminus, \R\setminus, \T\setminus, \$ and $\E\setminus$) allow the corresponding characters to be included in the data in a text field, though the actual characters are reserved. For example, the message fragment

```
DSP | TOTAL CHOLESTEROL 180 \F\90 - 200\F\
```

```
DSP|\S\----\S\
```

would cause the following information to be displayed, given suitable assignment of separators:

```
TOTAL CHOLESTEROL 180 |90 - 200|
```

2.7.5 Hexadecimal

When the hexadecimal escape sequence (Xdddd... \setminus) is used the X should be followed by 1 or more pairs of hexadecimal digits $(0, 1, \ldots, 9, A, \ldots, F)$. Consecutive pairs of the hexadecimal digits represent 8-bit binary values. The interpretation of the data is entirely left to an agreement between the sending and receiving applications that is beyond the scope of this Standard.

2.7.6 Formatted text

If the field is of the formatted text (FT) data type, formatting commands also may be surrounded by the escape character. Each command begins with the "." (period) character. The following formatting commands are available:

.sp <number></number>	End current output line and skip <number> vertical spaces. <number> is a positive integer or absent. If <number> is absent, skip one space. The horizontal character position remains unchanged. Note that only for purposes of compatibility with previous versions of HL7, "^\.sp\" is equivalent to "\.br\."</number></number></number>
.br	Begin new output line. Set the horizontal position to the current left margin and increment the vertical position by 1.
.fi	Begin word wrap or fill mode. This is the default state. It can be changed to a no-wrap mode using the .nf command.
.nf	Begin no-wrap mode.
.in <number></number>	Indent <number> of spaces, where <number> is a positive or negative integer. This command cannot appear after the first printable character of a line.</number></number>
.ti <number></number>	Temporarily indent <number> of spaces where number is a positive or negative integer. This command cannot appear after the first printable character of a line.</number>
.sk < number>	Skip <number> spaces to the right.</number>
.ce	End current output line and center the next line.

The component separator that marks each line defines the extent of the temporary indent command (.ti), and the beginning of each line in the no-wrap mode (.nf). Examples of formatting instructions that are NOT included in this data type include: width of display, position on page or screen, and type of output devices.

Figure 2-3 is an example of the FT data type from a radiology impression section of a radiology report:

Figure 2-3. Formatted text as transmitted

```
\.in+4\\.ti-4\ 1. The cardiomediastinal silhouette is now within normal limits.\.br\\.ti-4\ 2. Lung fields show minimal ground glass appearance.\.br\\.ti-4\ 3. A loop of colon visible in the left upper quadrant is distinctly abnormal with the appearance of mucosal effacement suggesting colitis.\.in-4\|
```

Figure 2-4 shows one way of presenting the data in Figure 2-3. The receiving system can create many other interpretations by varying the right margin.

Final Standard.

April 2007.

Figure 2-4. Formatted text in one possible presentation

The cardiomediastinal silhouette is now within normal limits.

Lung fields show minimal ground glass appearance.

A loop of colon visible in the left upper quadrant is distinctly abnormal with the appearance of mucosal effacement suggesting colitis.

2.7.7 Local

When the local escape sequence (\Z dddd... $\$) is used the Z should be followed by characters that are valid in a TX field. The interpretation of the data is entirely left to an agreement between the sending and receiving applications that is beyond the scope of this Standard.

2.8 VERSION COMPATIBILITY DEFINITION

The rules, described in section 2.6 "Message construction rules", for receiving HL7 messages and converting their contents to data values allow the following definition of a backward compatibility requirement between the 2.x versions of HL7:

Note: If an issue is not covered explicitly under these rules, no assumption should be made that the change is allowed.

The keys to understanding version compatibility are the following 2 axioms, plus the processing rules which state that unexpected information should be discarded.

- Old receivers receiving new messages should be able to continue receiving messages without error.
- New receivers should be able to understand old messages.

This section elaborates on what the kinds of changes can be done that satisfies these axioms. Only HL7 changes introduced in new versions are included. Local extensions are discussed in section 2.11, "Local Extension".

2.8.1 Adding messages or message constituents

A new message or a new constituent of an HL7 message may be introduced as described below. A sending system should be able to send a new message or new constituent; the receiver, regardless of its version level, must ignore any message or message constituent it is not expecting without generating an application failure. This does not preclude a receiver notifying the sender that additional element was ignored, but the receiving application should not fail just from the existence of additional element.

New messages may be introduced.

A new segment group may be defined.

The first segment in a newly-defined segment group, as of v 2.5, must be marked as required.

New segments may be introduced to an existing message. In general these will be introduced at the end of a message or a segment group, but they may be introduced elsewhere within the message if the segment hierarchy makes this necessary.

Care must be taken when introducing a new segment if this results in a situation in which a named segment X appears in two individual or group locations. See section 2.6 Segment definition.

New fields may be added at the end of a segment.

Page 2-20 April 2007. A new data type may be introduced.

New components may be added at the end of a data type.

A new table may be introduced.

2.8.2 Changing messages or message constituents

Allowable changes to messages or message constituents can be categorized as name, data type, optionality, repeatability, length or definition changes.

The descriptive text name of a message or message constituent (except for segment group name) may be changed. This should have no impact on either the sender's ability to transmit a message or the receiver's ability to receive and understand the message. Reasons for changing the descriptive text name include: 1) clarify a misleading name, and 2) encompassing a broader use without jeopardizing current use.

The data type of a field or data type component may be changed. A sending system should be able to send the modified field or data type; the receiver, regardless of its version level, should be able to understand the message and to ignore any message constituent it is not expecting.

- 1) The data type of the field may be changed provided that the components of the new data type have the same structure and interpretation as the old data type. For example, an IS data type may be changed to a CE, but a PPN data type cannot be changed to a PN. An NM data type cannot be changed to an ST data type.
- 2) For existing fields in existing segments, data types may be changed if the leftmost (prior version) part of the field has the same meaning as it had in the prior version of HL7. This is in accordance with the rules governing the addition of new components and subcomponents described in the section above. In other words, if the new parts of the field (those that are part of the new data type) are ignored, what remains is the old field (defined by the old data type), which has the same meaning as it had in the prior version of HL7.
- 3) If a data type component has its data type changed, the structure and interpretation must remain the same as the pre-existing component. Any new component is added at the end of the data type.

The optionality of a message constituent may be changed. A sending system should be able to send the modified field; the receiver, regardless of its version level, should be able to understand the message. This pertains as follows:

- 1) Existing optional segment groups may be made required.
- 2) Existing optional segments may be made conditional or required.
- 3) Existing optional fields may be made conditional or required.
- 4) Existing required fields may be made conditional if a new trigger event has been applied. The condition must be specified such that the field remains required for the pre-existing trigger events.
- 5) Existing optional components of a data type may be made conditional or required.

The repeatability of a message constituent may be changed. A sending system should be able to send the modified message constituent; the receiver, regardless of its version level, should be able to understand the message. Note that if a non-repeating message constituent is made repeating, information sent in the new repetitions may be lost to the recipient who is not expecting them.

If HL7 has given, or will give, semantic meaning to the first instance, to allow backward compatibility, the first instance of the repeating constituent shall have the same meaning as the non-repeating constituent had in the prior version of HL7. In this way, a receiving application that

interprets the message based upon the prior standard would continue to find the same intent communicated in the message.

If HL7 has not given, and will/can not give, semantic meaning to the first instance, and one or more implementation-applied business rules exist to select one of several occurrences to populate a non-repeating constituent, those same rules should be applied when a newer version of the standard allows for repetition of the constituent. By applying the prior business rules to determine the first occurrence of a repeating constituent, a receiving application that interprets the message based upon the prior standard would continue to find the same intent communicated in the message.

If, in the judgment of the owner/author of the standard section in question, changing a message constituent from non-repeating to repeating poses logical, parsing, business, or other compatibility issues, the owner/author may elect to create a new structure to eliminate the compatibility concern.

For example, if allowing a segment to repeat implies a change to the business intent of the message, the technical committee responsible can elect to define a new message structure (as a new message/trigger) and retain the old structure for backward compatibility.

This pertains as follows:

- 1) A segment group may change from non-repeating to repeating, subject to the backward compatibility concerns expressed above.
- 2) A segment group may NOT be changed from repeating to non-repeating.
- 3) A segment may be changed from non-repeating to repeating, subject to the backward compatibility concerns expressed above.
- 4) A segment may NOT be changed from repeating to non-repeating.
- 5) A field may be changed from non-repeating to repeating, subject to the backward compatibility concerns expressed above. A field may NOT be changed from repeating to non-repeating.

The length of a field, data type or data type component may be increased.

Table definition may change.

- 1) A table may be changed from user-defined to HL7 defined or externally defined.
- 2) A table may be changed from HL7 defined to an externally defined table. When this occurs, the data type of the field should be changed to a CNE or CWE.

2.8.3 Deprecating messages or message constituents

Any required, optional or conditional constituent of an HL7 message, including the message itself, may be deprecated. This means that one of the following situations has occurred:

- The message or message constituent no longer has a meaningful purpose
- The message or message constituent has been replaced by a better method

Language will be inserted stating the fact of deprecation, the version in which the deprecation occurred, and what message or message constituent, if any, replaces it. The phrase "Retained for backward compatibility only in version 2.x; refer to section n.m instead" will be the standard language for such an occurrence.

The fact of deprecation should not affect either the sender or the receiver because the message or message constituent is retained for backward compatibility. Implementers, by site agreement, may agree to not support deprecated message constituents.

The following are allowed:

A message may be deprecated.

- c) A trigger event may be deprecated.
- d) A message structure may be deprecated.
- e) A segment in an existing message may be deprecated. Implementers, by site agreement, may agree to not support deprecated segments. If the segment that is to be deprecated has dependents the entire segment group must be deprecated. For example, in a group [{ABC[DEF][{GHI}]], DEF and/or GHI may be deprecated, but ABC cannot be deprecated without deprecating the whole.
- f) A field may be deprecated by HL7. Implementers, by site agreement, may agree to not use deprecated fields.
- g) A data type may be deprecated provided all fields referencing it have been deprecated or there is an explicit statement that the data type is not to be used in any field defined in the future.
- h) A data type component may be deprecated.
- i) A table may be deprecated. This includes HL7 tables, user-defined tables, imported external tables and reference to external tables.
- j) An entry in an HL7-defined table may be deprecated. The table itself should be reviewed if it contains a substantial number of deprecated members.
- k) An entry in an imported external table may **not** be deprecated.

2.8.4 Removing messages or message constituents

A message or message constituent may be removed from the standard when criteria described in this section are met. HL7 will track old names so they are not re-used.

Note: To refer to the detail of a withdrawn message constituent, the reader will need to review the appropriate earlier version of the standard. By site agreement senders and receivers may agree to continue to use messages and/or message constituents that have been removed.

A message constituent may be immediately removed from the standard based on the following criteria (immediately means in the same version in which the criteria are met.).

- 1) A message structure may be removed immediately provided no message references it in the standard. Care must be taken lest a message structure is prematurely removed if the associated trigger event that contributed to its name is removed. For example, if a message structure ABC_D01 is associated with trigger events D01, D02 and D03 and D01 is changed and becomes associated with another existing message structure DEF_E01, the message structure ABC_D01 is still active and valid for trigger events D02 and D03.
- 2) A segment may be removed immediately provided no message references it in the standard.
- 3) A data type may be removed immediately provided no fields reference it. This occurs when the data type for a field is changed to a new data type that incorporates the components of the old one.
- 4) A table may be removed provided all fields and components, where the table has been used have been removed. This applies to HL7, user-defined and external tables. It is recognized that this might have a ripple effect.

A message constituent, except as noted in points c, d and e below, will be withdrawn and removed, no sooner than, after 2 versions in a deprecated state. For example, if a message was originally deprecated in v 2.2, its definition can be removed when v 2.5 is published.

- 1) A message type and its definition may be removed.
- 2) A trigger event and its definition may be removed.
- 3) A segment group in an existing message may be removed.
- 4) A segment in an existing message may be removed.

A deprecated field in an existing segment may **NOT** be removed from the standard. However, no sooner than, after 2 versions in a deprecated state, the field will be marked as withdrawn and all explanatory narrative will be removed

A deprecated component in an existing data type may **NOT** be removed from the standard. However, no sooner than, after 2 versions in a deprecated state, the component will be marked as withdrawn and all explanatory narrative will be removed.

A deprecated member of an existing HL7 table may **NOT** be removed from the standard. However, no sooner than, after 2 versions in a deprecated state, the table member will be marked as withdrawn and all explanatory narrative will be removed from the description and comment column.

2.8.5 Early adoption of HL7 changes

Early adoption of HL7 changes that have been approved by the technical committee for the next membership ballot is a common practice and is not prohibited, but carries risk. Such changes may be rejected or modified in the balloting process. One example is that the change may pass but may be positioned differently in the segment or data type.

2.8.6 Technical correction rules

Technical corrections may be applied between versions on a case-by-case basis. These corrections will be published on the HL7 website. The following meet criteria for technical correction:

Spelling correction

Incorrect section reference

Transcription error in an imported external table

Correction of an inconsistency between a segment attribute table and the field narrative

Erroneous examples

Erroneous/misleading descriptions

2.9 MESSAGE PROCESSING RULES

The processing rules described here apply to all exchanges of messages, whether or not the HL7 encoding rules or Lower Layer Protocols are used. They represent the primary message processing mode. The user may use either the original processing rules, described in section 2.9.2 or the enhanced processing rules, described in section 2.9.3.

Note: The MCF – Delayed Acknowledgement message has been removed from the standard. It was deprecated in v 2.2. Accordingly, the narrative notes regarding deferred processing have been removed from this section.

Certain variants exist and are documented elsewhere:

- a) an optional sequence number protocol. Refer to section 2.10.1.
- b) an optional protocol for continuing a very long message. Refer to section 2.10.2.

Because the protocol describes an exchange of messages, it is described in terms of two entities, the initiating and responding systems. Each is both a sender and receiver of messages. The initiating system sends first and then receives, while the responding system receives and then sends.

In overview this exchange proceeds as follows:

Message Exchange

Step	Process	Comment
Step 1	Initiator constructs an HL7 message from application data and sends it to the responding system	
Step 2	Responder receives message and processes it based on rules	The rules differ based on whether the original acknowledge mode or the enhanced acknowledgement mode is followed
Step 3	Responder sends response message	
Step 4	Initiator processes response message	

2.9.1 Message initiation

The initiating application creates a message with data values as defined in the appropriate chapter of this Standard. The fields shown below should be valued in the MSH segment (as defined under the MSH segment definition of this chapter). The message is encoded according to the applicable rules and sent to the lower level protocols, which will attempt to deliver it to the responding application. (For definitions of the MSH fields see Section 2.15.9, "MSH - message header segment")

Field	Notes
MSH-3-sending application	
MSH-4-sending facility	
MSH-5-receiving application	
MSH-6-receiving facility	
MSH-7-date/time of message	
MSH-9-message type	
MSH-10-message control ID	Unique identifier used to relate the response to the initial message.
MSH-11-processing ID	
MSH-12-version ID	
MSH-13-sequence number	
MSH-14-continuation pointer	Used in implementation of message continuation protocol. See Section 2.10.2, "Continuation messages and segments". Also see chapter 5.

Certain other fields in the MSH segment are required for the operation of the HL7 encoding rules; they will not be relevant if other encoding rules are employed.

The event code in the second component of *MSH-9-message type* is redundantly shown elsewhere in some messages. For example, the same information is in the EVN segment of the ADT message. This is for compatibility with prior versions of the HL7 protocol. Newly defined messages should only show the event code in *MSH-9-message type*.

2.9.2 Message response using the original processing rules

2.9.2.1 Accept and validate the message in responding system

Upon receipt of the message, when the Original Acknowledgement rules are used, the protocol software in the responding system validates it against at least the following criteria:

Note: Both MSH-15-accept acknowledgment type and MSH-16-application acknowledgment type are null or not present.

- a) the value in MSH-9-message type is one that is acceptable to the receiver.
- b) the value in MSH-12-version ID is acceptable to the receiver.
- c) the value in MSH-11-processing ID is appropriate for the application process handling the message.

If any of these edits fail, the protocol software rejects the message. That is, it creates an ACK message with AR in MSA-1-acknowledgment code.

If successful, the process moves to the next step.

2.9.2.2 Accept and validate/process the message in the receiving application

Upon successful validation by the responding system, the message is passed to the receiving application, which performs one of these functions:

- a) process the message successfully, generating the functional response message with a value of AA in MSA-1-acknowledgment code.
- b) send an error response, providing error information in functional segments to be included in the response message with a value of AE in MSA-1-acknowledgment code.
- c) fail to process (reject) the message for reasons unrelated to its content or format (system down, internal error, etc.). For most such problems it is likely that the responding system will be able to accept the same message at a later time. The implementers must decide on an application-specific basis whether the message should be automatically sent again. The response message contains a value of AR in MSA-1-acknowledgment code.

The MSH segment in the response is constructed anew following the rules used to create the initial message described above. In particular, MSH-7-date/time of message and MSH-10-message control ID refer to the response message; they are not echoes of the fields in the initial message. MSH-5-receiving application, MSH-6-receiving facility, and MSH-11-processing ID contain codes that are copied from MSH-3-sending application, MSH-4-sending facility and MSH-11-processing ID in the initiating message.

In all the responses described above, the following values are put in the MSA segment. Note that the field definitions for the MSA segment fields are in Section 2.15.8.

Field	Notes
MSA-1-acknowledgment code	As described above.
MSA-2-message control ID	MSH-10-message control ID from MSH segment of incoming message.
MSA-4-expected sequence number	As described in Section 2.10.1, "Sequence number

	<pre>protocol," (if the sequence number protocol is being used).</pre>
ERR segment fields	Refer to section 2.15.5.

The receiving application then passes the response message back to the responding system for the next step in the process.

2.9.2.3 Transmit the response message

Upon receiving the response message from the receiving application, the responding system transmits it to the initiating system.

The initiator processes the response message.

2.9.3 Response using enhanced acknowledgement

- a) the responding system receives the message and commits it to safe storage. This means that the responding system accepts the responsibility for the message in a manner that releases the sending system from any obligation to resend the message. The responding system now checks the message header record to determine whether or not the initiating system requires an accept acknowledgment message indicating successful receipt and secure storage of the message. If it does, the accept acknowledgment message is constructed and returned to the initiator.
- b) at this point, the requirements of the applications involved in the interface determine whether or not more information needs to be exchanged. This exchange is referred to as an application acknowledgment and includes information ranging from simple validation to a complex application-dependent response. If the receiving system is expected to return applicationdependent information, it initiates another exchange when this information is available. This time, the roles of initiator and responder are reversed.

2.9.3.1 Accept and validate the message in responding system

Upon receipt of the message, when the Enhanced Acknowledgement rules are used, the protocol software in the responding system makes an initial determination as to whether or not the message can be accepted, based on factors such as:

Note: At least one of MSH-15-accept acknowledgment type or MSH-16-application acknowledgment type is not null.

- a) the status of the interface
- b) the availability of safe storage onto which the message can be saved
- the syntactical correctness of the message, if the design of the receiving system includes this type of validation at this phase
- d) the values of MSH-9-message type, MSH-12-version ID, and MSH-11-processing ID, if the design of the receiving system includes this type of validation at this phase

It then examines the Message Header segment (MSH) to determine whether or not the initiating system requires an accept acknowledgment.

2.9.3.2 Transmit general acknowledgement message

A general acknowledgement message is not always required by the initiating system, but if it is the responding system sends one of the following:

 a) a commit accept (CA) in MSA-1-acknowledgment code if the message can be accepted for processing

- b) a commit reject (CR) in MSA-1-acknowledgment code if the one of the values of MSH-9-message type, MSH-12-version ID or MSH-11-processing ID is not acceptable to the receiving application
- c) a commit error (CE) in MSA-1-acknowledgment code if the message cannot be accepted for any other reason (e.g., sequence number error)

The MSH segment in the response is constructed anew following the rules used to create the initial message described above. In particular, MSH-7-date/time of message and MSH-10-message control ID refer to the response message; they are not echoes of the fields in the initial message. MSH-5-receiving application, MSH-6-receiving facility, and MSH-11-processing ID contain codes that are copied from MSH-3-sending application, MSH-4-sending facility and MSH-11-processing ID in the initiating message.

For this response, the following values are put in the MSA segment. Note that the field definitions for the MSA segment fields are in Section 2.15.8, 'MSA - message acknowledgment segment":

Field	Notes
MSA-2-message control ID	MSH-10-message control ID from the incoming message.
MSA-1-acknowledgment code	As described above.
MSA-4-expected sequence number	As described in Section 2.10.1, "Sequence number protocol" (if the sequence number protocol is being used).
ERR segment fields	Refer to section 2.15.5.

Note: MSH-15-accept acknowledgment type and MSH-16-application acknowledgment type are not valued (not present or null). At this point, the accept portion of this message exchange is considered complete.

2.9.3.3 Transmit application acknowledgement

If the message header segment indicates that the initiating system also requires an application acknowledgment, this will be returned as the initial message of a later exchange.

For this message, the receiving system acts as the initiator. Since the message it sends is application-specific, the layouts of these application-level response messages are defined in the relevant application-specific chapter. If needed, this application acknowledgment message can itself require (in MSH-15-accept acknowledgment type) an accept acknowledgment message (MSA). MSH-16-application acknowledgment type, however, is always null, since the protocol does not allow the application acknowledgment message to have an application acknowledgment.

For this response, the following values are put in the MSA segment. Note that the field definitions for the MSA segment fields are in Section 2.15.8, "MSA - message acknowledgment segment".

Field	Notes
MSA-2-message control ID	Identifies the initial message from the original initiating system as defined in Section 2.9.1, "Message initiation".
MSA-1-acknowledgment code	Uses the application (processing) acknowledgment codes as described in Section 2.15.8.1.
MSA-3-text message	Text description of error.
ERR-1-Error Code and Location	As described in section 2.15.5.1. Populated if an error condition is found.

At this point, the application acknowledgment portion of this message exchange is considered complete.

If the processing on the receiving system goes through multiple stages, chapter-defined messages may be used to relay status or informational changes to other systems (including the original initiating system). Such messages are not part of the acknowledgment scheme for the original message, but are considered to be independent messages triggered by events on the (original) responding system.

Note: The original acknowledgment protocol is equivalent to the enhanced acknowledgment protocol with MSH-15-accept acknowledgment type = NE and MSH-16-application acknowledgment type = AL, and with the application acknowledgment message defined so that it never requires an accept acknowledgment (MSH-15-accept acknowledgment type = NE).

2.10 SPECIAL HL7 PROTOCOLS

This section contains several extensions to the basic HL7 message protocol. These extensions represent implementation choices, and are to be used on a site-specific and application-specific basis as needed.

2.10.1 Sequence number protocol

For certain types of data transactions between systems the issue of keeping databases synchronized is critical. An example is an ancillary system such as lab, which needs to know the locations of all inpatients to route stat results correctly. If the lab receives an ADT transaction out of sequence, the census/location information may be incorrect. Although it is true that a simple one-to-one acknowledgment scheme can prevent out-of-sequence transactions between any two systems, only the use of sequence numbers can prevent duplicate transactions.

Note: Although this sequence number protocol is limited to the use of sequence numbers on a single transaction stream between two applications, this sequencing protocol is sufficiently robust to allow the design of HL7-compatible store-and-forward applications.

- a) initial conditions:
 - the system receiving the data stream is expected to store the sequence number of the most recently accepted transaction in a secure fashion before acknowledging that transaction. This stored sequence number allows comparison with the next transaction's sequence number, and the implementation of fault-tolerant restart capabilities.
 - 2) the initiating system keeps a queue of outgoing transactions indexed by the sequence number. The length of this queue must be negotiated as part of the design process for a given link. The minimum length for this queue is one.
 - 3) the sequence number is a positive (non-zero) integer; and it is incremented by one (by the initiating system) for each successive transaction.
- b) starting the link:
 - 1) the value of 0 (zero) for a sequence number is reserved: it is allowed only when the initiating system (re-)starts the link.
 - 2) if the receiving system gets a transaction with a 0 (zero) in the sequence number field, it should respond with a general acknowledgment message whose MSA contains a sequence number one greater than the sequence number of the last transaction it accepted in the Expected Sequence Number field. If this value does not exist (as on the first startup of a given link), the MSA should contain a sequence number of -1, meaning that the receiving system will use the positive, non-zero sequence number of the first transaction it accepts as its initial sequence number (see resynching the link, item e below).
 - 3) the initiating system then sends the transaction indexed by the expected sequence number (if that expected transaction is still on its queue). Otherwise the link is frozen until an operator intervenes.

c) normal operation of the link:

As it accepts each transaction, the receiving system securely stores the sequence number (which agrees with its expected sequence number), and then acknowledges the message by echoing the sequence number in *MSA-4-expected sequence number*.

- d) error conditions (from point of view of initiating system). These are generated by the receiving system, by its comparison of the sequence number sent out (with the MSH in MSH-13-sequence number) with the expected sequence number (MSA-4-expected sequence number received with the MSA).
 - 1) expected sequence number is one greater than current value. The previous acknowledgment was lost. That transaction was sent again. Correct by sending next transaction.
 - expected sequence number less than current value. Initiating system can try starting again by issuing a transaction with a sequence number of zero; or freeze the link for operator intervention.
 - 3) other errors: freeze the link for operator intervention
- e) forcing resynchronization of sequence numbers across the link. The value of -1 for a sequence number is reserved: it is allowed only when the initiating system is resynchronizing the link. Thus if the receiving system gets a value of -1 in the sequence number field, it should return a general acknowledgment message with a -1 in the expected sequence number field. The receiving system then resets its sequence number, using the non-zero positive sequence number of the next transaction it accepts.
- f) notes

When the initiating system sends a message with a sequence number of 0 or -1 (see b or e above), the segments beyond the MSH need not be present in the message, or, if present, all fields can be null. In terms of the responding system, for these two cases, only a General acknowledgment message is needed.

2.10.2 Continuation messages and segments

Sometimes, implementation limitations require that large messages or segments be broken into manageable chunks. We use the term "fragmentation" to describe how a logical message is broken into one or more separate HL7 messages. HL7 consciously identifies two situations where this may happen.

- First, a single segment may be too large. HL7 uses the "ADD" segment to handle breaking a single segment into several smaller segments.
- Second, a single HL7 message may be too large. HL7 uses the DSC segment and the continuation protocol to handle message fragmentation.

Note: HL7 does not define what "too large" means. Acceptable values are subject to site negotiations.

See chapter 5 for a discussion of the continuation pointer segment and the continuation pointer field, and their use in the continuation of responses to queries and in the continuation of unsolicited update messages.

2.10.2.1 Segment fragmentation/continuation using the ADD segment

Beginning with version 2.4, the ADD segment can be used within a message to break a long segment into shorter segments within a single HL7 message.

Note: Unless some explicit agreement exists between systems, a receiving application should not infer semantic meaning from the placement of the ADD segment.

To break a large segment,

- a) the segment being continued (call it ANY for this example) is ended at an arbitrary character position and terminated with the standard segment terminator (carriage return).
- b) the following segment is the ADD segment. All characters after the ADD and field separator ("|") are logically part of the preceding segment. All succeeding consecutive ADD segments contribute characters to the ANY segment until a non ADD segment is found.
- c) an ADD segment with no field separator takes on special meaning. See Section 2.14.2.3, "Segment fragmentation across messages."

For example, segment "C" can be fragmented within an HL7 message as follows:

```
A|1
B|2
C|34
ADD|5|678|
ADD|90
D|1
```

This is logically the same as

```
A|1
B|2
C|345|678|90
D|1
```

Note that the "|" at the end of the first ADD segment is part of the value, while the first "|" of each ADD is not.

2.10.2.2 Segment fragmentation/continuation using the DSC segment

When a message itself must be fragmented and sent as several HL7 messages, the DSC segment is used.

- a) First, the logical message is broken after an arbitrary segment.
- b) Next, a DSC segment is sent. The DSC-1-Continuation pointer field will contain a unique value that is used to match a subsequent message with this specific value.
- c) The DSC terminates the first fragment of the logical message.
- d) A subsequent message will contain in MSH-14-Continuation pointer, a value that matches the value from DSC-1. (The presence of a value in MSH-14 indicates that the message is a fragment of an earlier message.). Each subsequent message will have its own unique value for MSH-10-Message control ID. Coordination between DSC-1-Continuation pointer and the subsequent message's MSH-14-Continuation pointer is used to link the fragments in their proper order.
- e) The logical message is the concatenation of the contents of the first message (which while having no value in MSH-14, did end with DSC, and hence was actually a message fragment), plus all subsequent fragments (as identified by values in MSH-14).
- f) If enhanced mode acknowledgments are used to request an accept ACK, then the receiver will acknowledge each fragment with an ACK message. Since each fragment has its own Message Control ID, each fragment level accept ACK will use the Message Control ID from the fragment it is acknowledging.
- g) If enhanced mode acknowledgments are used to request an application level ACK, then the receiver

Final Standard. April 2007.

will send an acknowledgment after receiving the final fragment.

Note: The application level ACK should refer to the message by the Message Control ID of the first fragment.

Note: The receiver can tell that a given incoming message is a fragment by the presence of the trailing DSC. Subsequent HL7 messages are identified as fragments by the presence of an MSH-14 value. The presence of a DSC in a fragment indicates that more fragments are to follow.

It is a protocol error to end a message with DSC, and then never send a fragment.

For example, a single logical message may be fragmented into three HL7 messages:

```
---- Sender HL7 message (incomplete, fragment1)---
MSH|||||||1001||2.4|123||..
A|...
B|...
DSC|W4xy

---- Sender HL7 message (fragment 2)---
MSH|||||||2106||2.4|124|W4xy|
C|...
D|...
D|...
DSC|V292
----- another HL7 message(fragment 3, final)---
MSH|||||||2401||2.4|125|V292
E|...
```

Such a sequence is logically the same as the single message:

```
MSH|....|2.4|123||...
A|...
B|...
C|...
D|...
E|...
```

See example in section 2.18.4 for a more elaborate example.

2.10.2.3 Segment fragmentation across messages

If the last segment of a fragment itself needs to be broken, then the following idiomatic use of ADD shall apply.

a) the segment being continued (call it ANY for this example) is ended at an arbitrary character position and terminated with the standard segment terminator (carriage return).

Page 2-32

- b) the following segment is the ADD segment. It will contain no characters other than "ADD". (The lack of characters signals the receiver that ANY will be continued.)
- c) The second following segment will be the DSC, used as described above in Section 2.10.2.2, "Segment fragmentation/continuation using the DSC segment".
- d) The first segment of the following fragment will be an ADD segment. The characters of this ADD segment are logically part of the ANY segment of the previous fragment.

For example

```
MSH|...|2.4|
ANY|12
ADD
DSC|JR97
----- (fragment 2)
MSH|...|2.4|JR97
ADD|345
is logically the same as
MSH|...|2.4
```

ANY | 12345

e) transaction flow for a continued unsolicited message with a continued segment.

First unsolicited message and acknowledgment:

```
MSH
URD
[ URS ]
{DSP}
                             (last DSP is incomplete)
ADD
                             (contains no fields)
DSC
                             (Continuation segment)
                             (General acknowledgment)
MSH
MSA
[ { ERR } ]
                second unsolicited message and acknowledgment:
                             (contains continuation pointer from DSC segment of prior message)
MSH
ADD
                             (contains remainder of data from continued DSP segment from prior
                             message)
    {DSP}
```

Note: This second message could itself be continued with a second DSC and (if needed) a second ADD segment prior to it.

MSH (General acknowledgment)

```
[ { SFT } ]
MSA
[ { ERR } ]
```

2.10.3 HL7 batch protocol

There are instances when it is convenient to transfer a batch of HL7 messages. Common examples would be a batch of financial posting detail transactions (DFT's) sent from an ancillary to a financial system. Such a batch could be sent online using a common file transfer protocol, or offline via tape or diskette.

2.10.3.1 HL7 batch file structure

The structure of an HL7 batch file is given by the following (using the HL7 abstract message syntax)

```
[FHS]
                              (file header segment)
{
                              --- BATCH begin
[BHS]
                              (batch header segment)
 ] }
                              --- MESSAGE begin
  MSH
                              (zero or more HL7 messages)
 ] }
                              --- MESSAGE end
[BTS]
                              (batch trailer segment)
}
                              --- Batch end
                              (file trailer segment)
[FTS]
```

Notes:

The sequence numbering protocol has a natural application in batch transfers. See the discussion of batch acknowledgments that follows.

Although a batch will usually consist of a single type of message, there is nothing in the definition that restricts a batch to only one message type.

The HL7 file and batch header and trailer segments are defined in exactly the same manner as the HL7 message segments. Hence the HL7 message construction rules of Section 2.6, "Message construction rules," can be used to encode and decode HL7 batch files.

There are only two cases in which an HL7 batch file may contain zero HL7 messages:

- a) a batch containing zero HL7 messages may be sent to meet a requirement for periodic submission of batches when there are no messages to send.
- b) a batch containing zero negative acknowledgment messages may be sent to indicate that all the HL7 messages contained in the batch being acknowledged are implicitly acknowledged. See Section 2.10.3.3, "Acknowledging batches."

2.10.3.2 Related segments and data usage

The following segments relate to the HL7 Batch Protocol:

- BHS Batch Header (See section 2.15.2)
- BTSBatch Trailer (See section 2.15.3)
- FHSFile Header (See section 2.15.6)
- FTS File Trailer (See section 2.15.7)

The BTS segment contains a field, *BTS-3-batch totals*, which may have one or more totals drawn from fields within the individual messages. The method for computing such totals will be determined on a site or application basis unless explicitly stated in a functional chapter.

2.10.3.3 Acknowledging batches

In general, the utility of sending batches of data is that the data is accepted all at once, with errors processed on an exception basis. However, it is a permissible application of HL7 to acknowledge all messages. Several options for acknowledgment are given and will be chosen on an application basis. In these cases, the sequence numbering protocol can be useful to the applications processing the batch.

The options are:

- a) all messages are acknowledged in the response batch.
- b) the receiving system prints some form of batch control report, which is then dealt with manually by personnel at the sending system. No acknowledgments are performed by the protocol software.
- an automated acknowledgment batch is created containing acknowledgment messages only for those messages containing errors. In this mode an empty acknowledgment batch may be created (i.e., an HL7 batch file without any HL7 acknowledgment messages).

In each case where there is a response batch, its format is a batch of individual messages. Each individual message is in the format defined for an online response in the chapters. Consider, for example, a batch that might be constructed to respond to a batch of Detailed Financial Transactions (Chapter 6). The messages in the response batch would consist entirely of ACK messages, since ACK is the response shown in Chapter 6.

When batches are retransmitted after the correction of errors, *BHS-12-reference batch control ID* should contain the batch control ID of the original batch.

2.10.3.4 Batch message as a query response

The HL7 query also can be used to query for a batch in the following manner:

- a) use the value BB or BL of QRD-5-deferred response type to specify a batch response. The query will be acknowledged with a general acknowledgment as in the Deferred Access example above (see chapter 5)
- b) in addition, insert into the batch file the QRD and QRF segments as follows:

```
[FHS] (file header segment)

{ [BHS] (batch header segment)

[QRD] (the QRD and QRF define the

[QRF] query that this batch is a response to)

{ MSH (one or more HL7 messages)
```

Health Level Seven, Version 2.5.1 © 2007. All rights reserved

```
....
}
[BTS] (batch trailer segment)
}
[FTS] (file trailer segment)
```

c) the acknowledgment of a batch is described in this chapter (see Section 2.10.3.3, "Acknowledging batches").

2.10.4 Modes for updating via repeating segments

When groups of repeating segments appear within a message it is not obvious from the basic HL7 abstract message syntax how best to apply the new group of repeating segments on the receiving system. HL7 suggests two methods: the "snapshot" mode and the "action code/unique identifier" mode.

Background:

The segments which repeat in HL7 messages Patient Administration (ADT)/Financial Information messages (AL1, DG1, PR1, GT1, IN1, IN2, IN3, NK1, NTE) present a problem if the requirement is to update only part of the information previously sent. Prior to Version 2.3 of the Standard, all such repeating segments had to be sent again in the update, because there was no way to indicate which ones changed and which ones did not. For example, if two DG1 segments were sent originally (containing a primary and secondary diagnosis), and then if a tertiary diagnoses needed to be sent, the sending system had to send all diagnoses which were currently valid, that is, three DG1 segments (containing primary, secondary and tertiary diagnosis). This way of doing things is referred to as the "snapshot" mode. In this mode, everything (all repeating segments) must be sent with every subsequent message in the series of messages.

In the Order Entry, Observation Reporting, and Master Files chapters, action codes (e.g., order control codes and result status codes) and unique identifiers (e.g., placer and filler numbers) are currently specified as part of the ORC, OBR, OBX and MFE segments. So, except for the NTE segments, this problem exists mainly for the Patient Administration and Financial Management chapter segments.

For systems implementing Version 2.3 or higher, if a particular repeating segment can be updated by either of these two modes, the parties concerned will determine by agreement on a site-specific basis whether an interface will use the "snapshot" mode or the "action code/unique identifier" mode.

2.10.4.1 Snapshot mode update definition

In the "snapshot" mode, the group of repeating segments from the incoming message replaces the prior group of repeating segments on the receiving system. This is equivalent to a deletion of the prior group followed by the addition of the new group. The snapshot mode is the usual mode in Version 2.2 and 2.1 implementations of HL7, but it is also available for Version 2.3 and future versions. To specify "delete all of the segments in this repeating group" in the snapshot mode, send a single segment with "delete data" indicated for all fields.

For example, if the following DG1 segment is in an ADT update message (for an inpatient stay):

and the snapshot mode is being used, this indicates that all previously-transmitted diagnoses for this inpatient stay should be deleted.

Page 2-36

2.10.4.2 Action code/unique identifier mode update definition

In the "action code/unique identifier" mode, each member of a repeating group of segments must have a unique identifier (equivalent to the filler number in observational reports messages). The choice of delete/update/insert is determined by the action code (equivalent to the result status in observational reports messages). Refer to *HL7 Table 0206 - Segment action code* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0206 - Segment action code

Value	Description	Comment
Α	Add/Insert	
D	Delete	
U	Update	

The *unique identifier* is defined in a general manner as follows: it uniquely identifies one of multiple repetitions of the primary entity defined by the repeating segment in a way that does not change over time. It is not dependent on any particular message identifier level (MSH) fields; it functions across messages, not just within a message. The *unique identifier* will be chosen on a segment-specific basis, depending on the primary entity referenced by the segment. For some cases, such as a diagnosis code, it may be a CE data type. For others, such as a person identifier, it may be a CX data type. For others it may be an EI (entity identifier) data type.

Note: This mode is available for use only for new segments for Version 2.3 and for new segments in future versions

2.11 LOCAL EXTENSION

The following section specifies where local extensions to a message and its constituent parts are allowed, where they are not, and where they are ill-advised. Inter-version compatibility rules must be followed plus there are certain restrictions and prohibitions outlined in the sections that follow. In general, basic structures should not be altered.

The reader is advised to review the Conformance mechanism defined in section 2.12, "Conformance Using Message Profiles" before applying local extensions. Using the conformance mechanism may eliminate the need for local extension.

2.11.1 Messages

Messages may be locally extended as follows:

- a) Users may develop local Z messages to cover areas not already covered by existing HL7 messages. These should be composed of HL7 segments where possible.
- b) A local Z message may consist entirely of Z segments except that it must begin with a MSH segment.
- c) A local Z Acknowledgement message must begin with an MSH segment followed by an MSA segment, an optional SFT segment and a conditional ERR segment.
- d) Users may develop Z segments and add them to Z messages.
- e) Users may develop Z segments and add them to HL7 messages. The trigger event may remain the same if the intent of the message has remained unchanged.
- f) The practice of adding additional HL7 segments, like NTE, to existing HL7 messages locally is ill-advised. HL7 may move or change the segment in a future release; this will render the message unparsible.

2.11.2 Trigger events

Users may develop local Z trigger events for messages.

2.11.3 Segment groups

- a) The practice of turning a single segment or segments into a segment group locally **is not** allowed within an HL7 event. It will have a negative impact on XML and any component-based encoding schemes. Note that HL7, on other hand, can do this.
- b) A segment group may not be ungrouped locally.

```
Fox example, if there is an HL7 group as follows:
    {
    ABC
   [DEF
   [GHI]]
    }
one cannot change it in a local implementation to be as follows:
    {[ABC]}
   [DEF]
   [GHI]
Example 2:
   If the original definition was:
        GROUP1 ::= ABC, GROUP2?
        GROUP2 ::= DEF, GHI?
    and someone wished to constrain the segments in GROUP2 to be mandatory
    (i.e. the HL7 grammar would look like:
        {[
        ABC
        DEF
        [GHI]
        ]}
```

Their message instance would need to still look like:

```
<GROUP1>
<ABC/>
<GROUP2>
<DEF/>
<GHI/>
</GROUP2>
</GROUP1>
```

It would be an error if they instead sent it as:

```
<GROUP1>
<ABC/>
<DEF/>
<GHI/>
</GROUP1>
```

- c) A segment group can repeat locally. The 1st repetition needs to mean what it does in HL7
- d) The practice of incorporating a Z segment into a segment group locally is allowed.

2.11.4 Segments

2.11.4.1 Local extension rules for segments

Users may not modify an existing segment, except as specified in section 2.8.2.

Locally defined fields may be defined for use in locally defined segments, although HL7 defined fields are a better choice when available. The practice of extending an HL7 segment with locally defined fields, while not prohibited, is ill-advised.

HL7 also recognizes that sites may have locally defined fields where the users believe the enhancement may be of interest to the HL7 community as a whole and are moving forward with a proposal to HL7.

2.11.4.2 Caveats for locally extending segments

Locally extending an HL7 segment with locally defined fields will likely cause conformance problems with the next release of the HL7 standard. There are, however, certain circumstances where HL7 has, itself, directed the membership to add Z fields as an interim measure between versions to accommodate

Health Level Seven, Version 2.5.1 © 2007. All rights reserved

regulatory agency requirements. These are fields that HL7 has reserved for official introduction in the next release.

If the local site intends to add a proposed field early, there is a risk that it may collide with another field when HL7 officially approves or rejects the proposed additions. Some sites have employed the practice of assigning a high sequence number locally i.e. leaving a gap between the last official HL7 field and the proposed new field. The user—defined fields should be deleted or deprecated when HL7 officially approves or rejects the proposed additions so that the fields do not collide. It must be understood that the local implementation will have to adjust if a collision occurs and they want to conform.

2.11.5 Data types

The following rules apply for locally extending data types:

- a) Locally defined data types may be defined for use in locally defined segment fields, although HL7 defined data types are a better choice when available.
- b) Locally redefining existing data type components, e.g., changing a component from NM to ST, is prohibited.
- c) Data types may be locally extended by adding new components at the end. This action creates a Z data type.

Note: The practice of extending an HL7 data type with locally defined components is particularly illadvised and may cause conformance problems with the next release of the HL7 standard.

2.11.6 Tables

Rules for locally extending tables are the same as discussed in section 2.5.3.6, "Table":

- a) Users may redefine suggested values in User-defined tables.
- b) Local tables may be defined for Z fields.
- c) Local tables may be assigned to HL7 fields with data type CWE.

2.12 CONFORMANCE USING MESSAGE PROFILES

Previous sections in this chapter define the rules and conventions for constructing and communicating a message including the parts of a message structure. Messages that adhere to those rules of a specific version of a standard are **compliant** to that version of the standard.

Compliance to the HL7 Standard has historically been impossible to define and measure in a meaningful way. To compensate for this shortcoming, vendors and sites have used various methods of specifying boundary conditions such as optionality and cardinality. Frequently, specifications have given little guidance beyond the often-indefinite constraints provided in the HL7 Standard.

This section presents the methodology for producing a precise and unambiguous specification called a *message profile*. Messages that adhere to the constraints of a message profile are said to be **conformant** to the profile. For conformance to be measurable, the message profile must specify the following types of information:

- What data will be passed in a message.
- The format in which the data will be passed.
- The acknowledgement responsibilities of the sender and receiver.

A conformance statement is a claim that the behavior of an application or application module agrees with the constraints stated in one or more message profiles. This section defines the message profile; however, the conformance statement will not be discussed further in this document.

Definition: An HL7 message profile is an unambiguous specification of one or more standard HL7 messages that have been analyzed for a particular use case. It prescribes a set of precise constraints upon one or more standard HL7 messages.

An HL7 message profile is compliant, in all aspects, with the HL7 defined message(s) used in the profile. It may specify constraints on the standard HL7 message definition.

A message profile fully describes a conversation between two or more systems through the combination of the following:

- a) one use case analysis,
- b) one or more dynamic definitions, and
- c) one or more static definitions.

The *use case analysis* may be documented as a use case diagram (supported with text) or just a textual description (See section 2.12.2, "*Use case model*".

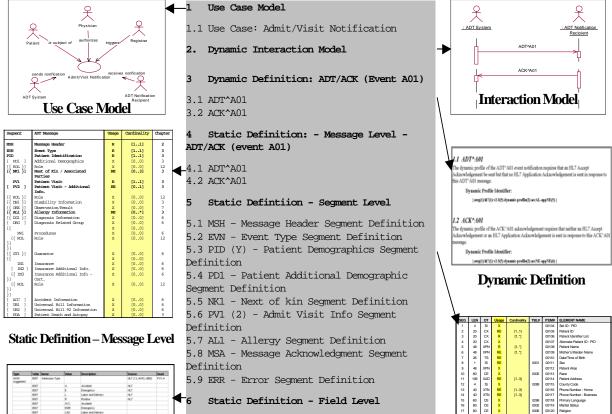
The dynamic definition is an interaction specification for a conversation between 2 or more systems (See Section.2.12.3, "Dynamic definition".

The static definition is an exhaustive specification for a single message structure (See Section 2.12.4, "Static definition"). Normatively expressed as an XML document validated against the normative message profile Schema, it may be registered on the HL7 web site (See Section 2.12.9, "Message profile document").

For detailed background information regarding message profiles, the reader is referred to the Conformance SIG balloted informative document, "Message Profiling Specification, Version 2.2", published November 30, 2000, upon which this section is based. This document is available from the HL7 Conformance SIG Web site (http://www.hl7.org).

A sample message profile is shown on the next page to assist in illustrating the constituents of a message profile and how they work together.

Message Profile Example



6.1 Table 0001 - Sex

6.5 Table 0005 - Race

6.6 Table 0006 - Religion 6.7 Table 0007 - Admission Type

6.2 Table 0002 - Marital Status 6.3 Table 0003 - Event Type Code 6.4 Table 0004 - Patient Class

6.8 Table 0008 - Acknowledgement Code 6.9 Table 0009 - Ambulatory Status

Static Definition - Segment Level

lipe	Table	Name	Volum	Description	Source	Dood
ANO ruggeded		Admission Type			HL7 2.3, AWO, UBIG	PV1-4
	0007		A	Accident	16.7	
	0007			Emergency	16.7	
	0007		t.	Labor and Delivery	16.7	
	0007		R	Foutne	16.7	
	0067		ACC	Accident		
	0007		EMR	Emergency		
	0007		LAD	Labor and Delivery		
	0007		NEB	Newborn		
	0007		ROU	Foutre		
	0007		ces	Observation		
	0007		URG	Urgent		
	0007		BLE.	Elective		
	0067		REH	Fehabitation		
	0007		HEL	Helicopter		
	0007		NEP	Newborn Frendure		
	0007		NSP	Newtorn Skik Premiture		
	0007		004	Occupational Heath		
	0007		on	Outpetient to impetient		

Static Definition – Field Level Vocabulary

2.12.1 Message profile

Definition: An HL7 message profile is an unambiguous specification of one or more standard HL7 messages that have been analyzed for a particular use case. Each message profile may have a unique identifier as well as publish/subscribe topics.

2.12.1.1 Message profile identifier

Each message profile may have a unique identifier to facilitate reference.

2.12.1.2 Message profile publish/subscribe topics

The message profile publish/subscribe topics is not required to be unique but might be used by publish/subscribe systems to convey aspects of the message profile (See in MSH-21 Message Profile Identifier (EI) 01598).

The topics are not a normative constituent of the message profile but, if provided, as part of the metadata, and should be in the format described below. The topic elements will be separated by the dash (-). Any element that does not have a value should use null. As this information may be used in a message instance, it should not contain any HL7 message delimiters.

Seq	Topic Element Name	Value
1	Conformance SIG ID	confsig
2	An organization identifier	Abbreviated version of the organization name
3	The HL7 version	Refer to <i>HL7 Table 0104 - Version ID</i> for valid values
4	Торіс Туре	profile
5	Accept Acknowledgement	The accept acknowledgement responsibilities.(refer to <i>HL7 Table 0155 – Accept/application acknowledgment conditions</i> for valid values)
6	Application Acknowledgement	The application acknowledgement responsibilities (refer to <i>HL7 Table 0155 – Accept/application acknowledgment conditions</i> for valid values)
7	Acknowledgement Mode	Deferred or Immediate

Message Profile Publish/Subscribe Topics Elements

An example of message profile publish/subscribe topics:

confSig-MyOrganization-2.4-profile-AL-NE-Immediate

2.12.2 Use case model

Definition: A use case model documents the scope and requirements for an HL7 message profile or set of message profiles.

The use case model must:

- a) Provide a name that clearly and concisely defines the exchange
- b) Document the purpose for each message exchange

- c) Define the actors, including the sending and receiving applications
- d) Define the flow of events between these actors including, where appropriate, derived events
- e) Document the situations in which the exchange of a particular HL7 message profile is required

Refer to the HL7 V3.0 Message Development Framework (MDF 99) for further information on use case models and their uses within HL7.¹

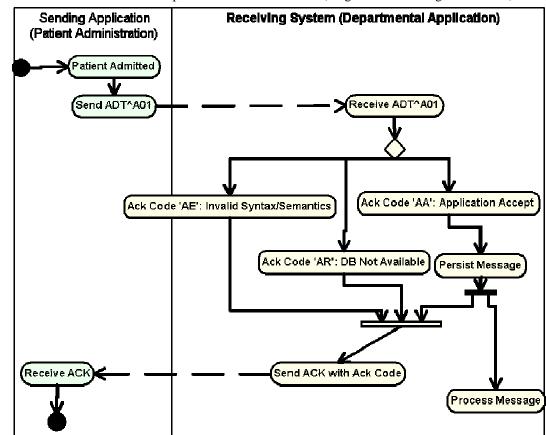
2.12.3 Dynamic definition

Definition: The dynamic definition is an interaction specification for a conversation between 2 or more systems. It may reference one to many static definitions. The dynamic definition may include an interaction model in addition to the acknowledgement responsibilities.

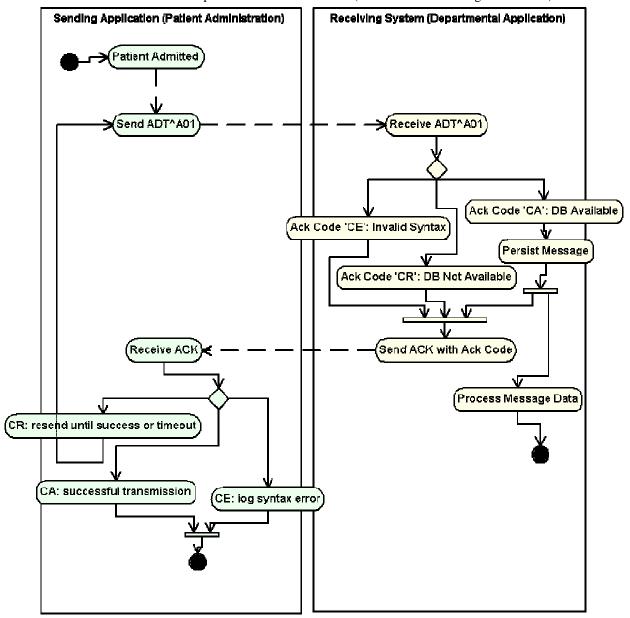
2.12.3.1 Interaction model

Definition: The Interaction Model illustrates the sequence of trigger events and resulting message flows between 2 or more systems. It may be in literal or graphical form. Graphical form should be a UML activity diagram. Example activity diagrams are shown here for the original and enhanced acknowledgement modes.

Even though the MDF is a HL7 v3.0 document, this is general information not bound to v3.0 and, therefore, can be applied to this v2.x document. HL7 is currently working on a HL7 Development Framework (HDF) that will replace the MDF. Once approved by HL7, the HDF will replace the MDF.



Interaction Model Example – ADT^A01/ACK^A01 (Original Acknowledgement Mode)



Interaction Model Example – ADT^A01/ACK^A01 (Enhanced Acknowledgement Mode)

2.12.3.2 Acknowledgements

The specific HL7 acknowledgments required and/or allowed for use with the specified static definition of the HL7 message profile shall be defined. Specifically, the dynamic definition shall identify whether an **accept** and/or **application** level acknowledgment is allowed or required.

For any one static definition there may be one or more dynamic definition.

The dynamic definition shall define the conditions under which an accept and/or application level acknowledgment is expected.

Allowed conditions include:

- a) Always
- b) Never
- c) Only on success
- d) Only on error.

2.12.4 Static definition

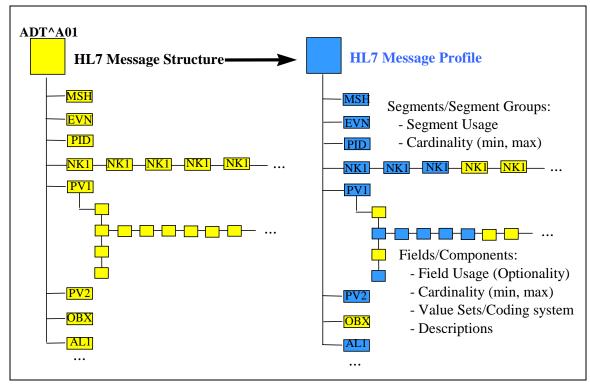
Definition: The static definition is an exhaustive specification for a single message. Normatively expressed in XML, it may be registered on the HL7 web site (See Section 2.12.9, "Message profile document"). The static definition is based on a message structure defined in the HL7 Standard. The message code, trigger event, event description, role (Sender or Receiver) and, if applicable, the order control code will be provided. A complete static definition shall be defined at the **message**, **segment**, and **field** levels. A static definition is compliant in **all aspects** with the HL7-defined message it profiles. However, the static definition may define additional constraints on the standard HL7 message.

A static definition identifies only those specific elements of a standard HL7 message that are used in the exchange.

A static definition explicitly defines:

- a) Segments, segment groups, fields and components usage rules
- b) Cardinalities
- c) Value sets and coding systems.

The following figure depicts, in a graphical way, the concept that the static definition is an overlay of the HL7 message structure further constraining it. For example, where the HL7 message structure shows unlimited number of NK1 Segments, the static definition allows for only three repetitions. Additionally, fields that are optional in the HL7 message structure may be required within the HL7 static definitions.



Static Definition Illustration

2.12.4.1 Static definition identifier

Each static definition must have a unique identifier when registered (See section 2.12.9, "Message profile document"). An authority other than the registry may define this identifier. If, at the time of registration, the static profile does not have an identifier assigned by the submitter's authority, the registry authority will assign one. The static definition identifier would be the identifier used if a system asserts a strict conformance claim (See MSH-21 Message Profile Identifier (EI) 01598).

2.12.4.2 Static definition publish/subscribe topics

Static definition publish/subscribe topics convey the static definition aspects of the message profile. These topics may be used by publish/subscribe systems (See MSH-21 Message Profile Identifier (EI) 01598).

The topics are not a normative constituent of the message profile but, if provided as part of the metadata (See section 2.12.9, "Message profile document"), should be in the format described below. The topic elements will be separated by the dash (-). Any element that does not have a value should be null (nothing between the dashes). As this information may be used in a message instance, it should not contain any HL7 message delimiters.

	State Definition 1 ubilsit/Subscribe Topies Components			
Seq	Topic element name	Value(s)		
1	Conformance SIG ID	confsig		
2	An organization identifier	Abbreviated version of the organization name		
3	The HL7 version	Refer to <i>HL7 Table 0104 – Version ID</i> for valid values		
4	Tonic Type	static		

Static Definition Publish/Subscribe Topics Components

5	Message Type Code	Refer to <i>HL7 Table 0076 - Message type</i> for valid values
6	Event Type	Refer to <i>HL7 Table 0003 - Event type</i> for valid values (this table may be extended by locally defined Z trigger events)
7	Order Control Code	Refer to HL7 Table 0119 - Order Control Codes for valid values
8	Structure Type	Refer to <i>HL7 Table 0354 - Message structure</i> for valid values (this table may extended by locally defined message structures)
9	Specification Version	Version number of the application, interface, or specification
10	Specification Status	Status of the application, interface, or specification
11	Role	Sender or Receiver

An example of static definition publish/subscribe topics:

confsiq-MyOrganization-2.4-static-ADT-A04--ADT_A01-v2-draft-Sender

2.12.5 Profile type

There are three basic profile types used in documenting standard conformance:

- a) HL7 Standard profile (represents a specific HL7 published standard, creation and publication limited to HL7 use)
- b) Constrainable profile (with "Optional" elements which must be further constrained in order to create implementation profiles)
- c) Implementation profile (no "Optional" parts, fully implementable).

This model allows vendors or providers to publish generic profiles from which fully constrained implementation profiles can be created.

In comparison with the HL7 standard, separate constrainable and implementation profiles may exist for the receiving and the sending role.

Both constrainable profiles and implementation profiles focus primarily on the expectations of the sending application, with minimal constraints on the application behavior of the receiver.

Due to the HL7 principle of not specifying application behavior, this message profile section will not address use cases where explicit constraints on the expected behavior of the receiver application (e.g. whether the receiver must process information, ignore it or generate an error) are required.

2.12.5.1 Vendor constrainable profiles

A vendor might develop a message profile to which all their software products must comply but, in itself, is not an implementation profile. The different products serve potentially different domains and might be implemented with products from other vendors. The vendor profile constrains the HL7 Standard by defining agreed-to vocabularies, conditionality rules, supported items, and local extensions that are shared across all products. The profile is not necessarily fully constrained. For example, the vendor profile might allow the usage code of optional as, across different products, an element may be required in some use cases, be optional or conditional in others, and not be supported at all in still others. The vendor's individual software products might themselves have profiles that would build on, and further constrain, their vendor profile. The product profile would specifically define the information model and the elements contained

within. The product profile might still be a constrainable profile as elements might result in different HL7 messages based on configuration settings and customizations. Only once all configuration settings and customizations have been taken into account can you have a fully-constrained 'Implementation' profile.

2.12.5.2 Realm constrainable profiles

Realms, national and regional, profiles represent localization and restrictions placed on the appropriate standard, while providing enough optionality for basing the more specific implementation profiles. Some examples of realm constrainable profiles are:

- a) AS4700.1-2001 Implementation of HL7 v2.3.1 Part 1:Patient Administration (constrainable profile for Australian Standards, constrains HL7 2.3.1, Chapter 3).
- AS/NZS 4700.3-1999 Implementation of HL7 v2.3 Part 3: Electronic messages for exchange of information on Drug Prescription (constrainable profile for Australian Standards, constrains HL7 2.3, various Chapters).

2.12.5.3 Implementation profiles

Implementation profiles represent the lowest level of specification required for unambiguous implementation. Examples of some implementation profiles are:

- Adverse Drug Reaction Implementers Specification, 2001, TGA (implementation profile, constrains Australian Standards and HL7 v2.3.1 constrainable profiles for Therapeutic Goods Administration ADRAC Messaging Implementation Project)
- b) Diabetes Reporting Implementers Specification, 2001, UNSW (implementation profile, constrains Australian Standards and HL7 v2.3.1 constrainable profiles for University of NSW Diabetes Messaging Implementation Project)
- c) Specific version of a product, as implemented, at a specific provider.

2.12.6 Static definition concepts

This section discusses concepts common to each level of the static definition (message, segment and field). It uses the generic term 'element' to refer to segment groups, segments, fields, components and subcomponents.

2.12.6.1 Cardinality

Cardinality identifies the minimum and maximum number of repetitions for a particular element (Segment Group, Segment or Field). Cardinalities are expressed as a minimum-maximum pair of non-negative integers. A conformant application must always send at least the minimum number of repetitions, and may never send more than the maximum number of repetitions.

There are two special values for cardinality. If the minimum number of repetitions is 0, the element may be omitted from a message. In certain circumstances, the maximum number of repetitions may have no practical limit. In this case, it is identified as '*' Examples of common cardinality combinations are:

Cardinality

Value	Description	Comment
[00]	Element never present	
[01]	Element may be omitted and it can have at most one Occurrence	
[11]	Element must have exactly one Occurrence	

[0n]	Element may be omitted or may repeat up to n times	
[1n]	Element must appear at least once, and may repeat up to n times	
[0*]	Element may be omitted or repeat for an unlimited number of times	
[1*]	Element must appear at least once, and may repeat unlimited number of times	
[mn]	Element must appear at least "m" and at most" n" times	

2.12.6.2 Usage

Usage refers to the circumstances under which an element appears in a message. Some elements must always be present, others may never be present, and others may only be present in certain circumstances. A set of codes has been defined to clearly identify the rules governing the presence of a particular element.

The rules govern the expected behavior of the sending application and limited restrictions on the receiving application with respect to the element. These usage codes expand/clarify the optionality codes defined in the HL7 standard.

Usage

Value	Description	Comment
R	Required	A conforming sending application shall populate all "R" elements with a non-empty value. conforming receiving application shall process (save/print/archive/etc.) or ignore the information conveyed by required elements. A conforming receiving application must not raise an error due to the presence of a required element, but may raise an error due to the absence of a required element. Any element designated as required in a standard HL7 message definition shall also be required in all HL7 message profiles of that standard message.
RE	Required but may be empty	The element may be missing from the message, but must be sent by the sending application if there is relevant data. A conforming sending application must be capable of providing all "RE" elements. If the conforming sending application knows the required values for the element, then it must send that element. If the conforming sending application does not know the required values, then that element will be omitted.
		Receiving applications will be expected to process (save/print/archive/etc.) or ignore data contained in the element, but must be able to successfully process the message if the element is omitted (no error message should be generated because the element is missing).
O	Optional	This code indicates that the Usage for this element has not yet been defined. A usage of 'Optional' may not be used in 'implementation' profiles (no-optionality profiles). Conformance may not be tested on an Optional field. Narrower profiles may be defined based on this profile, and may assign any usage code to the element

Value	Description	Comment		
С	Conditional	This usage has an associated condition predicate (See section 2.12.6.6, "Condition predicate").		
		If the predicate is satisfied:		
		A conformant sending application must always send the element. A conformant receiving application must process or ignore data in the element. It may raise an error if the element is not present.		
		If the predicate is NOT satisfied:		
		A conformant sending application must NOT send the element. A conformant receiving application must NOT raise an error if the condition predicate is false and the element is not present, though it may raise an error if the element IS present.		
CE	Conditional but it may be empty	This usage has an associated condition predicate (See section 2.12.6.6, "Condition predicate").		
		If the predicate is satisfied:		
		If the conforming sending application knows the required values for the element, then the application must send the element. If the conforming sending application does not know the values required for this element, then the element shall be omitted. The conforming sending application must be capable of knowing the element (when the predicate is true) for all 'CE' elements.		
		If the element is present, the conformant receiving application shall process (display/print/archive/etc.) or ignore the values of that element. If the element is not present, the conformant receiving application shall not raise an error due to the presence or absence of the element.		
		If the predicate is not satisfied:		
		The conformant sending application shall not populate the element.		
		The conformant receiving application may raise an application error if the element is present.		
X	Not supported	For conformant sending applications, the element will not be sent. Conformant receiving applications may ignore the element if it is sent, or may raise an application error.		

2.12.6.3 Relationship between HL7 optionality and conformance usage

Conformance usage codes are more specific than HL7 Optionality codes. Because of the requirement that conformance statements must be compliant with the HL7 message definition it is derived from, there are restrictions on what usage codes may be assigned to an element based on the HL7 Optionality.

HL7 Optionality and Conformance Usage

HL7 Optionality Allowed Conformance Usage		Comment	
R - Required	R		
O - Optional	R, RE, O, C, CE, X	O is only permitted for constrainable profiles	
C - Conditional	C, CE, R		
X – Not Supported	X		
B – Backward Compatibility	R, RE, O, C, CE, X	O is only permitted for constrainable definitions	
W - Withdrawn	R, RE, O, C, CE, X		

2.12.6.4 Relationship between usage and cardinality

Both usage and cardinality govern the appearance of a field and, therefore, a relationship exists between them. For purposes of message profiles, the cardinality shall be constrained by the usage code. The constraints are:

- a) If the usage of an element is Required (R), the minimum cardinality for the element shall always be greater than or equal to 1.
- b) If the usage of an element is not Required (R) (i.e. any code other than 'R'), the minimum cardinality shall be 0 except in the following condition:

If the profile author wishes to express a circumstance where an element will not always be present, but when present must have a minimum number of repetitions greater than one, this may be indicated by specifying the non-required Usage code with the minimum cardinality representing the minimum number of repetitions when the element is present. In UML, this would generally be expressed as (0,n..m), indicating that permitted occurrences are either zero, or the range of n through m)

Example combinations:

Example Usage Cardinality Combinations			
Cardinality	Usage	Interpretation	
[11]	R	There will always be exactly 1 repetition present	
[15]	R	There will be between 1 and 5 repetitions present	
[01]	RE	The element must be supported, but may not always be present	
[05]	С	If the condition predicate is true, there will be between 1 and 5 repetitions. If the predicate is false, there will be 0 repetitions.	
[35]	RE	If any values for the element are sent, there must be at least 3 and no more than 5 repetitions. However, the element may be absent (0 repetitions)	

Example Usage-Cardinality Combinations

2.12.6.5 Usage within hierarchical elements

As part of the conformance framework, there is an additional rule for determining whether a particular 'element' is present. The rule is as follows: For an element to be considered present, it must have content. This means that simple elements (fields, components or sub-components with simple data types such as NM, ST, ID) must have at least one character. Complex elements (those composed of other elements. e.g. Messages, Segment Groups, Segments, Fields with complex data types such as CE, XPN, etc.), must contain at least one component that is present. Elements that do not meet these conditions are not considered to be present.

For example, if a segment is made up of 10 optional fields, at least one of the fields must be present in order for the segment to be considered present. Thus, if the segment is marked as Required, an instance message would only be conformant if the segment contained at least one field. The reason for this rule is to ensure that the intent of the profile is met. The rule is necessary because the traditional 'vertical bar' encoding allows for a bare segment identifier with no fields (e.g. a line containing just "NTE|" would be considered valid under the standard rules, but would be considered not present as far as testing against a conformance specification. The XML encoding also allows this, as well as fields without their components, components without their sub-components, etc. (e.g. <PID.3/>.

2.12.6.6 Condition predicate

If the usage code of an element is C or CE, then a conditionality predicate must be associated with this element that identifies the conditions under which the element must be or is allowed to be present. The predicate must be testable and based on other values within the message. This predicate may be expressed as a mathematical expression or in text and may utilize operators such as equivalence, logical AND, logical OR and NOT. The conforming sending and receiving applications shall both evaluate the predicate. When the Usage is not 'C' or 'CE', the conditionality predicate will not be valued.

2.12.7 Static definition - message level

The message level static definition shall be documented using the HL7 **abstract message** syntax, with the addition of specifying cardinality and usage for each of the segments contained within the message structure.

The **usage** column shall be updated to reflect the usage of the segment or group within this particular static definition.

The **cardinality** column shall accurately reflect the minimum and maximum number of repetitions of the field allowed for the segment or group within this particular static definition.

Sample Static Definition - Message Level

Segment	ADT Message	Usage	Cardinality	Chapter
MSH	Message Header	R	[11]	2
EVN	Event Type	R	[11]	3
PID	Patient Identification	R	[11]	3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics	X	[00]	3
[{ ROL }]	Role	X	[00]	12
[{ NK1 }]	Next of Kin / Associated Parties	RE	[03]	3
PV1	Patient Visit	С	[01]	3
[PV2]	Patient Visit - Additional Info.	RE	[01]	3
[{ ROL }]	Role	X	[00]	12
[{ DB1 }]	Disability Information	X	[00]	3
[{ OBX }]	Observation/Result	X	[00]	7
[{ AL1 }]	Allergy Information	RE	[010]	3
[{ DG1 }]	Diagnosis Information	X	[00]	6
[DRG]	Diagnosis Related Group	X	[00]	6
[{		X	[00]	
PR1	Procedures	X	[00]	6
[{ ROL }]	Role	X	[00]	12
}]				
[{ GT1 }]	Guarantor	X	[00]	6
[{		X	[00]	
IN1	Insurance	X	[00]	6
[IN2]	Insurance Additional Info.	X	[00]	6
[{ IN3 }]	Insurance Additional Info - Cert.	X	[00]	6

Segment	ADT Message	Usage	Cardinality	Chapter
[{ ROL }]	Role	X	[00]	12
}]				
[ACC]	Accident Information	X	[00]	6
[UB1]	Universal Bill Information	X	[00]	6
[UB2]	Universal Bill 92 Information	X	[00]	6
[PDA]	Patient Death and Autopsy	X	[00]	3

2.12.7.1 Segment definitions

The set of segments and segment groups included within the message shall be defined. Any segments or segment groups that are required by HL7 shall be included.

2.12.7.2 Segment usage

The usage of the segment or group within a message shall be defined using one of the codes in the previously defined usage table.

2.12.7.3 Segment cardinality

Some segments and segment groups within the HL7 message are allowed to repeat. The cardinality of all the segments and groups within the message shall be defined.

Static definition - segment level

The segment level static definition shall be documented using the HL7 **segment attribute table** format with the addition of specifying length, usage and cardinality for each of the fields contained within the segment.

- The **length column** shall be updated to accurately reflect the maximum allowed length for the field within this segment definition.
- The **usage column** shall accurately reflect the usage of the field within this segment definition.
- The **cardinality column** shall accurately reflect the minimum and maximum number of repetitions of the field allowed for this segment definition.

Sample Segment Level Definition – PID (Patient Identification) Segment

SEQ	LEN	DT	Usage	Cardinality	TBL#	Item#	Element Name
1	4	SI	X			00104	Set ID - PID
2	20	CX	RE	[01]		00105	Patient ID
3	20	CX	R	[1*]		00106	Patient Identifier List
4	20	CX	X			00107	Alternate Patient ID - PID
5	48	XPN	R	[1*]		00108	Patient Name
6	48	XPN	RE	[0*]		00109	Mother's Maiden Name
7	26	TS	RE	[01]		00110	Date/Time of Birth
8	1	IS	RE	[01]	0001	00111	Sex
9	48	XPN	X			00112	Patient Alias
10	80	CE	X		0005	00113	Race

SEQ	LEN	DT	Usage	Cardinality	TBL#	Item#	Element Name
11	106	XAD	RE	[03]		00114	Patient Address
12	4	IS	X		0289	00115	County Code
13	40	XTN	RE	[03]		00116	Phone Number - Home
14	40	XTN	RE	[03]		00117	Phone Number - Business
15	60	CE	X		0296	00118	Primary Language
16	80	CE	X		0002	00119	Marital Status
17	80	CE	X		0006	00120	Religion
18	20	CX	X			00121	Patient Account Number
19	16	ST	RE	[01]		00122	SSN Number - Patient
20	25	DLN	X			00123	Driver's License Number - Patient
21	20	CX	X			00124	Mother's Identifier
22	80	CE	X		0189	00125	Ethnic Group
23	60	ST	RE	[01]		00126	Birth Place
24	1	ID	X		0136	00127	Multiple Birth Indicator
25	2	NM	X			00128	Birth Order
26	80	CE	X		0171	00129	Citizenship
27	60	CE	X		0172	00130	Veterans Military Status
28	80	CE	X		0212	00739	Nationality
29	26	TS	X			00740	Patient Death Date and Time
30	1	ID	X		0136	00741	Patient Death Indicator
31	1	ID	RE	[01]	0136	01535	Identity Unknown Indicator
32	20	IS	X		0445	01536	Identity Reliability Code
33	26	TS	X			01537	Last Update Date/Time
34	40	HD	X			01538	Last Update Facility
35	80	CE	CE	[01]	0446	01539	Species Code
36	80	CE	CE	[01]	0447	01540	Breed Code
37	80	ST	X			01541	Strain
38	80	CE	X		0429	01542	Production Class Code
39	80	CE	X		0171	01840	Tribal Citizenship

2.12.7.5 Field definitions

The set of fields of each segment within the message level definition shall be specified.

If a segment occurs multiple times within a message profile, it may be represented by different segment profiles. This shall be explicitly defined within the message level definition.

2.12.7.6 Field cardinality

Some fields within a segment are allowed to repeat. The cardinality of all the fields within the segment shall be defined.

2.12.7.7 Field usage

The **usage** of the field within a segment shall be defined consistent with the profile type, and using one of codes identified in the previously defined Usage tables.

2.12.7.8 Data type

The data type of the field within a segment shall be updated to accurately reflect the data type for the field within this segment definition.

2.12.7.9 Length

The length of the field within a segment shall be updated to accurately reflect the maximum allowed length for the field within this segment definition.

2.12.7.10 Table reference

The name of the table of the field within a segment shall be updated to accurately reflect the table used for the field within this segment definition.

2.12.8 Static definition - field level

2.12.8.1 Field Definitions

Each individual field within a segment shall be completely defined to eliminate any possible ambiguity.

In cases where HL7 2.x field descriptions are not sufficient, a precise semantic definition shall be specified.

2.12.8.2 User-defined and suggested field values

The allowed code sets (table) for many fields within the HL7 Standard are specified as user-defined (data type IS) or HL7-defined (data type ID) values. For clarification of rules governing various code sets, see Section 2.5.3.6, "Table".

In these cases, the **exact allowed code set** shall be specified. These values shall be defined according to the specified scope of use for the message profile by vendors, provider, or within a realm.

Coded Entry (CE, CF, CWE, and CNE) type fields are specified as being populated based on coding systems. For each of these fields, the specific coding system used shall be identified. Compliant applications are required to use the specified coding system, but may also use an alternate coding system as supported by the data type (See the example within each data type definition).

2.12.8.3 Constant values

If an element will always have a constant value, this shall be specified. Constant values may only be specified for elements that represent primitive data types, i.e., they have no components or subcomponents.

2.12.8.4 Data values

A list of example data values for the element may be specified. Data values may only be specified for elements that represent primitive data types i.e. they no components or sub-components.

2.12.8.5 Components and subcomponents

Many fields and components in versions of HL7 prior to 2.5 were defined to be **Composite Data (CM)** data types. As of 2.5, all field instances will reference a valid data type other than CM. Addenda for versions 2.3.1 and 2.4 are available that define more precise names for the CM data types. These names allow a more precise data type name for each of the fields using the former CM data type to be more easily used for XML encoding of message instances. Although message profiling is not limited to a specific version of HL7, it is **strongly** encouraged that these new data types be used to increase interoperability between versions.

Each component within composite fields shall be profiled. This requires defining the usage, length, data type, and data values of each of the components. Where there are sub-components of a component, each of the sub-components shall also be profiled using the same method. With the exception of cardinality, the rules for these definitions follow those for fields (See section 0, "Static definition - segment level").

2.12.9 Message profile document

HL7 Headquarters will provide a utility, hereafter called registry, on the Members' Only Web site (http://www.hl7.org) where the message profile can be registered.

Messages profiles in the registry are all catalogued with a set of metadata. Those entities submitting message profiles into the registry will need to fill out a form that captures the required metadata information. The registry and the metadata will be documented in an informative document and will not be discussed further in this document.

2.12.9.1 Message profile document format

The Conformance SIG researched the best approach to standardize the format of a message profile to facilitate comparison and measurement. XML (eXtensible Markup Language XML W3C XML 1.0 2nd Ed²) documents appeared to be the best tool for this.

This use of XML is not, in any way, related to the HL7 2.xml encoding specification that describes the XML encoding of message instances. The message profile document format provides structure to the documentation of the message profile and does not limit the encoding of an actual message instance.

2.12.9.2 Message profile document definition

A message profile document will be a valid HL7 message profiles if it conforms to the constraints expressed in the message profile document definition (See section 2.19, "Message profile document definition"), and the additional rules described in this document.

2.12.10 Tools

The tools used for creation, sharing, re-use, reporting, analyzing, and comparing message profiles are outside the scope of the HL7 standard. Refer to the Conformance SIG web site for useful links that are of widespread interest to, and in support of, message profiles and the Conformance SIG.³

² Refer to the World Wide Web Consortium web site for this recommendation (http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml).

³ The Messaging Workbench (MWB) is the first freeware tool available for creating message profiles. This tool is neither developed nor supported by HL7 but its use is widespread among HL7 members. The MWB developer is an active member of the HL7 Conformance SIG and the tool has evolved with input from this SIG. Refer to HL7 Conformance SIG Documents/Downloads.

Page 2-59

2.13 CHAPTER FORMATS FOR DEFINING HL7 MESSAGES

Subsequent chapters of this document describe messages that are exchanged among applications in functionally-specific situations. Each chapter is organized as follows:

- a) purpose. This is an overview describing the purpose of the chapter, general information and concepts.
- b) trigger events and messages. There is a list of the trigger events.
- c) message segments. The segments defined in a chapter are then listed in a functional order designed to maximize conceptual clarity.
- d) examples. Complete messages are included.
- e) implementation considerations. Special supplementary information is presented here. This includes issues that must be addressed in planning an implementation.
- f) outstanding issues. Issues still under consideration or requiring consideration are listed here.

2.13.1 Message representation

For each trigger event the messages that are exchanged when the trigger event occurs are defined using the HL7 abstract message syntax as follows:

Each message is defined in special notation that lists the segment IDs in the order they would appear in the message. Braces, $\{\ldots\}$, indicate one or more repetitions of the enclosed group of segments. Of course, the group may contain only a single segment. Brackets, $[\ldots]$, show that the enclosed group of segments is optional. If a group of segments is optional and may repeat it should be enclosed in brackets and braces, $[\{\ldots\}]$.

Note: [{...}] and {[...]} are equivalent.

Whenever braces or brackets enclose more than one segment ID a special stylistic convention is used to help the reader understand the hierarchy of repetition. For example, the first segment ID appears on the same line as the brace, two columns to the right. The subsequent segment IDs appear under the first. The closing brace appears on a line of its own in the same column as the opening brace. This convention is an optional convenience to the user. If there is conflict between its use and the braces that appear in a message schematic, the braces define the actual grouping of segments that is permitted.

A choice of one segment from a group of segments is indicated by using angle brackets to delimit the group and vertical bar delimiters between the several segments.

Example: The ORM^O01, as described in chapter 4 section 4.4.1, allows a choice of order detail segments. The choice would be represented as follows:

<OBR | RQD | RQ1 | RXO | ODS | ODT>

Consider the hypothetical triggering event **a widget report is requested**. It might be served by the Widget Request (WRQ) and Widget Report (WRP) messages. These would be defined in the Widget chapter (say Chapter XX). The Widget Request message might consist of the following segments: Message Header (MSH), Software Segment (SFT) and Widget ID (WID). The Widget Report message might consist of the following segments: Message Header (MSH), Software Segment (SFT), Message acknowledgment (MSA),

Final Standard. April 2007.

The Australian Healthcare Messaging Laboratory (AHML) is a not-for-profit venture of the University of Ballarat providing a developer test-bed available to HL7 members as well as validation of the static profile. Contact AHML (http://www.ahml.com.au.) for more information.

Error Segment (ERR) and one or more Widget Description (WDN) Segments each of which is followed by a single Widget Portion segment (WPN) followed by zero or more Widget Portion Detail (WPD) segments.

2.13.2 HL7 abstract message syntax example

The schematic form for this hypothetical exchange of messages is shown in Figure 2-5:

Figure 2-5. Hypothetical schematic message

Trigger Event: WIDGET REPORT IS REQUESTED

WRQ	Widget Request	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{SFT}]	Software Segment		2
WID	Widget ID		XX

WRP	Widget Report	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{SFT}]	Software Segment		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ERR}]	Error Segment		2
{	Widget begin		
WDN	Widget Description		XX
WPN	Widget Portion		XX
}	Widget end		

The WID, WDN, WPN, and WPD segments would be defined by the widget committee in the widget chapter, as designated by the Arabic numeral XX in the right column. The MSH and MSA segments, although included in the widget messages, are defined in another chapter. They are incorporated by reference into the widget chapter by the chapter number XX.

On the other hand, the widget committee might decide that the WPN and WPD segments should appear in pairs, but the pairs are optional and can repeat. Then the schematic for the WRP message would be as shown in Figure 2-6.

Figure 2-6. WPN and WPD segments in pairs

WRF	Widget Report	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
{	Widget begin		
WDN	Widget Description		XX
[{	WidgetDetailA begin		
WPN	Widget Portion		XX
WPD	Widget Portion Detail		XX
}]	WidgetDetailA end		
}	Widget end		

If the widget committee determined that at least one pair of WPN and WPD segments must follow a WDN, then the notation would be as shown in Figure 2-7.

WRP Widget Report **Group Name** Status Chapter **MSH** Message Header **MSA** Message Acknowledgment 2 --Widget begin WDN Widget Description XX---WidgetDetailB begin { Widget Portion WPN XXWPD Widget Portion Detail XX---WidgetDetailB begin ---Widget end

Figure 2-7. At least one pair of WPN and WPD

2.14 ACKNOWLEDGMENT MESSAGES

Acknowledgment messages may be defined on an application basis. However the simple general acknowledgment message (ACK) may be used where the application does not define a special message (application level acknowledgment) and in other cases as described in Section 2.9, "Message Processing Rules".

2.14.1 ACK - general acknowledgment

The simple general acknowledgment (ACK) can be used where the application does not define a special application level acknowledgment message or where there has been an error that precludes application processing. It is also used for accept level acknowledgments. The details are described in Section 2.9, "Message Processing Rules".

ACK^varies^ACK	General Acknowledgment	Status	Chapter
MSH	Message Header		2
[{ SFT }]	Software segment		2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment		2
[{ ERR }]	Error		2

Note: For the general acknowledgment (ACK) message, the value of MSH-9-2-Trigger event is equal to the value of MSH-9-2-Trigger event in the message being acknowledged. The value of MSH-9-3-Message structure for the general acknowledgment message is always ACK.

2.14.2 MCF - delayed acknowledgment

Note: The MCF message was deprecated in v2.2 and has been withdrawn and removed from the standard as of v 2.5.

2.15 MESSAGE CONTROL SEGMENTS

The following segments are necessary to support the functionality described in this chapter.

Note: The HL7 message construction rules define the standard HL7 encoding rules, creating variable length delimited messages from the segments defined below. Although only one set of encoding rules is defined as a standard in HL7 Version 2.3, other encoding rules are possible (but since they are non-standard, they may only used by a site-specific agreement).

The segments in this section are listed in alphabetical order. The following chart shows a summary of the segments listed by category.

Segment Category	Segment Name	HL7 Section Reference
Control		
	ADD	2.15.1
	BHS	2.15.2
	BTS	2.15.3
	DSC	2.15.4
	ERR	2.15.5
	FHS	2.15.6
	FTS	2.15.7
	MSA	2.15.8
	MSH	2.15.9
General Purpose		
	NTE	2.15.10
	OVR	2.15.11
	SFT	2.15.12

Figure 2-8. HL7 message segments

2.15.1 ADD - addendum segment

The ADD segment is used to define the continuation of the prior segment in a continuation message. See Section2.10.2, "Continuation messages and segments," for details.

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1-n	6553	ST	0			00066	Addendum Continuation Pointer
	6						

HL7 Attribute Table - ADD - Addendum

2.15.1.0 ADD field definition

2.15.1.1 ADD-1 Addendum Continuation Pointer (ST) 00066

Definition: This field is used to define the continuation of the prior segment in a continuation message. See section 2.10.2, "Continuation messages and segments" for details. When the ADD is sent after the segment being continued, it contains no fields. It is only a marker that the previous segment is being continued in a subsequent message. Thus fields 1-N are not present. The sequence designation, 1-N, means the remainder of the fields in the segment being continued. These remainder of the segment being continued fields are present only when the ADD is sent with a continuation message.

2.15.2 BHS - batch header segment

The BHS segment defines the start of a batch.

HL7 Attribute Table - BHS - Batch Header

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	1	ST	R			00081	Batch Field Separator
2	3	ST	R			00082	Batch Encoding Characters
3	227	HD	0			00083	Batch Sending Application
4	227	HD	0			00084	Batch Sending Facility
5	227	HD	0			00085	Batch Receiving Application
6	227	HD	0			00086	Batch Receiving Facility
7	26	TS	0			00087	Batch Creation Date/Time
8	40	ST	0			00088	Batch Security
9	20	ST	0			00089	Batch Name/ID/Type
10	80	ST	0			00090	Batch Comment
11	20	ST	0			00091	Batch Control ID
12	20	ST	0			00092	Reference Batch Control ID

2.15.2.0 BHS field definitions

2.15.2.1 BHS-1 Batch Field Separator (ST) 00081

Definition: This field contains the separator between the segment ID and the first real field, *BHS-2-batch encoding characters*. As such it serves as the separator and defines the character to be used as a separator for the rest of the message. Recommended value is |,(ASCII 124).

2.15.2.2 BHS-2 Batch Encoding Characters (ST) 00082

Definition: This field contains the four characters in the following order: the component separator, repetition separator, escape characters, and subcomponent separator. Recommended values are ^~\& (ASCII 94, 126, 92, and 38, respectively). See Section 2.5.4, "Message".

2.15.2.3 BHS-3 Batch Sending Application (HD) 00083

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field uniquely identifies the sending application among all other applications within the network enterprise. The network enterprise consists of all those applications that participate in the exchange of HL7 messages within the enterprise. Entirely site-defined.

2.15.2.4 BHS-4 Batch Sending Facility (HD) 00084

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the address of one of several occurrences of the same application within the sending system. Absent other considerations, the Medicare Provider ID might be used with an appropriate sub-identifier in the second component. Entirely site-defined.

2.15.2.5 BHS-5 Batch Receiving Application (HD) 00085

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field uniquely identifies the receiving applications among all other applications within the network enterprise. The network enterprise consists of all those applications that participate in the exchange of HL7 messages within the enterprise. Entirely site-defined.

2.15.2.6 BHS-6 Batch Receiving Facility (HD) 00086

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the receiving application among multiple identical instances of the application running on behalf of different organizations. See comments *BHS-4-batch sending facility*. Entirely site-defined.

2.15.2.7 BHS-7 Batch Creation Date/Time (TS) 00087

```
Components: <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the date/time that the sending system created the message. If the time zone is specified, it will be used throughout the message as the default time zone.

2.15.2.8 BHS-8 Batch Security (ST) 00088

Definition: In some applications of HL7, this field is used to implement security features. Its use is not yet further specified.

2.15.2.9 BHS-9 Batch Name/ID/Type (ST) 00089

Definition: This field can be used by the application processing the batch. It can have extra components if needed.

Note: the text regarding "extra components" has been retained for backward compatibility, but it is not currently an accepted format for the ST data type.

2.15.2.10 BHS-10 Batch Comment (ST) 00090

Definition: This field is a comment field that is not further defined in the HL7 protocol.

2.15.2.11 BHS-11 Batch Control ID (ST) 00091

Definition: This field is used to uniquely identify a particular batch. It can be echoed back in *BHS-12-reference batch control ID* if an answering batch is needed.

2.15.2.12 BHS-12 Reference Batch Control ID (ST) 00092

Definition: This field contains the value of *BHS-11-batch control ID* when this batch was originally transmitted. Not present if this batch is being sent for the first time. See definition for *BHS-11-batch control ID*.

2.15.3 BTS - batch trailer segment

The BTS segment defines the end of a batch.

HL7 Attribute Table - BTS - Batch Trailer

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	10	ST	0			00093	Batch Message Count
2	80	ST	0			00090	Batch Comment
3	100	NM	0	Υ		00095	Batch Totals

2.15.3.0 BTS field definitions

2.15.3.1 BTS-1 Batch Message Count (ST) 00093

Definition: This field contains the count of the individual messages contained within the batch.

2.15.3.2 BTS-2 Batch Comment (ST) 00090

Definition: This field is a comment field that is not further defined in the HL7 protocol.

2.15.3.3 BTS-3 Batch Totals (NM) 00095

Definition: We encourage new users of this field to use the HL7 Version 2.3 data type of NM and to define it as "repeating." This field contains the batch total. If more than a single batch total exists, this field may be repeated.

Prior to v2.5 this field may have been defined as a CM data type for backward compatibility with HL7 Versions 2.2 and 2.1 with each total being carried as a separate component. Each component in this case is an NM data type.

2.15.4 DSC - continuation pointer segment

The DSC segment is used in the continuation protocol.

HL7 Attribute Table - DSC - Continuation Pointer

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	180	ST	0			00014	Continuation Pointer
2	1	ID	0		0398	01354	Continuation Style

2.15.4.0 DSC field definitions

2.15.4.1 DSC-1 Continuation Pointer (ST) 00014

Definition: This field contains the continuation pointer. In an initial query, this field is not present. If the responder returns a value of null or not present, then there is no more data to fulfill any future continuation requests. For use with continuations of unsolicited messages, see chapter 5 and section 2.10.2, "Continuation messages and segments". Note that continuation protocols work with both display- and record-oriented messages.

2.15.4.2 DSC-2 Continuation Style (ID) 01354

Definition: Indicates whether this is a fragmented message (see Section 2.10.2, "Continuation messages and segments"), or if it is part of an interactive continuation message (see Section 5.6.3, "Interactive continuation of response messages").

Refer to *HL7 Table 0398 – Continuation Style Code* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0398 - Continuation style code

Value	Description	Comment
F	Fragmentation	
Ī	Interactive Continuation	

2.15.5 ERR - error segment

The ERR segment is used to add error comments to acknowledgment messages.

Use Cases:

Severity: A receiving application generates two messages, one an error, and the other a warning and sends each of them. The application displays them both, prefixing the messages appropriately with the severity.

Application Error Code: A receiving application generates an error that reports an application error code and returns this information in its response. This code in turn is used by helpdesk staff to pinpoint the exact cause of the error, or by the application to prompt an appropriate response from the user. (Ex. Deceased date must be greater than or equal to birth date).

Application Error Parameter: A receiving application encounters an error during processing of a transaction. In addition to an error code, the application provides an error parameter that gives greater detail as to the exact nature of the error. The receiving application looks up the message corresponding to the error code, substitutes in the parameter, and displays the resulting message to the user.

Diagnostic Information: While processing a transaction, a receiving application encounters an exception. When the exception is thrown, it provides a volume of detailed information relating to the error encountered. The receiving application captures the information and sends it in its response. The user reports the error to the help desk, and on request, faxes a copy of the diagnostic information to assist analyzing the problem.

User Message: A user executes an application function that generates a transaction that is sent to another application for further processing. During this processing, the receiving application encounters an error and, as part of the error handling routine, retrieves a User Message that it returns in its response. The originating application receives the error and displays it to the end user with the intent that the error condition can be resolved and the user can re-execute the function without error.

Inform Person Code: After submitting a dispense transaction, a response is returned to the user indicating that the patient may be abusing drugs. Given the sensitivity of this warning, the error is returned with an indicator stating that the patient should not be informed of the error with the implication that steps should be taken to rule out or confirm the warning.

Override Type: If a business rule states that a prescription on hold cannot be dispensed, an override type might be "Dispense Held Prescription" to allow the prescription to be dispensed in exception to the rule.

Override Reason Codes: A patient is given a prescription; however, before completing the prescription, the remaining pills are spoiled. The patient returns to their pharmacy and explains the situation to their pharmacist. The pharmacist decides to replace the spoiled drugs; however, when attempting to record the event, a message is returned indicating that the dispense would exceed the maximum amount prescribed. The pharmacist overrides the rule and specifies an Override Reason Code indicating a replacement of lost product.

Help Desk Contact: Help desk contact information is stored in a database. When an application error is encountered, the database is queried and the most current help desk contact information is returned in the error message. This is displayed to the user by the receiving application.

Better Error Location Information: Receiving system detects an error with the 3rd repetition of the ROL.4 (Role Person - XCN).16 (Name Context – CE).4(Alternate Identifier – IS). The application identifies the specific repetition and component when raising the error, simplifying diagnosis of the problem.

Support for multiple Error Locations: Two fields are marked as conditional, with the condition that one of the two must be specified. The sending application leaves both blank. The receiving application detects the problem, and sends back a single error indicating that one of the fields must be filled in. The ERR segment identifies both positions within the message that relate to the error.

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	402	ELD.	В	Y			Ferror Code and Lacation
	493	ELD	ь	Ť		00024	Error Code and Location
2	18	ERL	0	Υ		01812	Error Location
3	705	CWE	R		0357	01813	HL7 Error Code
4	2	ID	R		0516	01814	Severity
5	705	CWE	0		0533	01815	Application Error Code
6	80	ST	0	Y/10		01816	Application Error Parameter
7	2048	TX	0			01817	Diagnostic Information
8	250	TX	0			01818	User Message
9	20	IS	0	Υ	0517	01819	Inform Person Indicator
10	705	CWE	0		0518	01820	Override Type
11	705	CWE	0	Υ	0519	01821	Override Reason Code
12	652	XTN	0	Υ		01822	Help Desk Contact Point

HL7 Attribute Table - ERR - Error

2.15.5.0 ERR field definition

2.15.5.1 ERR-1 Error Code and Location (ELD) 00024

Subcomponents for Code Identifying Error (CE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Definition: This field identifies an erroneous segment in another message. Retained for backward compatibility only as of v 2.5; refer to ERR-2 and ERR-3 instead.

Refer to HL7 Table 0357 - Message Error Condition Codes for valid values.

2.15.5.2 ERR-2 Error Location (ERL) 01812

Components: <Segment ID (ST)> ^ <Segment Sequence (NM)> ^ <Field Position (NM)> ^ <Field Repetition (NM)> ^ <Component Number (NM)> ^ <Sub-Component Number (NM)>

Definition: Identifies the location in a message related to the identified error, warning or message. If multiple repetitions are present, the error results from the values in a combination of places.

2.15.5.3 ERR-3 HL7 Error Code (CWE) 01813

```
Components: <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^ <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: Identifies the HL7 (communications) error code. Refer to *HL7 Table 0357 – Message Error Condition Codes* for valid values.

Value	Description	Comment
0	Message accepted	Success. Optional, as the AA conveys success. Used for systems that must always return a status code.
100	Segment sequence error	Error: The message segments were not in the proper order, or required segments are missing.
101	Required field missing	Error: A required field is missing from a segment
102	Data type error	Error: The field contained data of the wrong data type, e.g. an NM field contained "FOO".
103	Table value not found	Error: A field of data type ID or IS was compared against the corresponding table, and no match was found.
200	Unsupported message type	Rejection: The Message Type is not supported.
201	Unsupported event code	Rejection: The Event Code is not supported.
202	Unsupported processing id	Rejection: The Processing ID is not supported.
203	Unsupported version id	Rejection: The Version ID is not supported.
204	Unknown key identifier	Rejection: The ID of the patient, order, etc., was not found. Used for transactions <i>other than</i> additions, e.g. transfer of a non-existent patient.
205	Duplicate key identifier	Rejection: The ID of the patient, order, etc., already exists. Used in response to addition transactions (Admit, New Order, etc.).
206	Application record locked	Rejection: The transaction could not be performed at the application storage level, e.g., database locked.
207	Application internal error	Rejection: A catchall for internal errors not explicitly covered by other codes.

HL7 Table 0357 - Message error condition codes

2.15.5.4 ERR-4 Severity (ID) 01814

Definition: Identifies the severity of an application error. Knowing if something is Error, Warning or Information is intrinsic to how an application handles the content. Refer to *HL7 Table 0516 - Error severity* for valid values. If ERR-3 has a value of "0", ERR-4 will have a value of "I".

Example: a Warning could be used to indicate that notes were present, but ignored because they could not be automatically processed, and therefore information could have been missed.

Example of Information: When submitting a claim, a payor might indicate remaining coverage under limit.

Value	Description	Comment
W	Warning	Transaction successful, but there may issues
I	Information	Transaction was successful but includes information e.g., inform patient
Е	Error	Transaction was unsuccessful

HL7 Table 0516 – Error severity

2.15.5.5 ERR-5 Application Error Code (CWE) 01815

```
Components: <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^ <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: Application specific code identifying the specific error that occurred. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0533 – Application Error Code* for suggested values.

If the message associated with the code has parameters, it is recommended that the message be indicated in the format of the java .text.MessageFormat approach⁴. This style provides information on the parameter type to allow numbers, dates and times to be formatted appropriately for the language.

User-defined Table 0533 – Application error code

Value	Description	Comment		
	No suggested values.			

2.15.5.6 ERR-6 Application Error Parameter (ST) 01816

Definition: Additional information to be used, together with the Application Error Code, to understand a particular error condition/warning/etc. This field can repeat to allow for up to 10 parameters.

Example: If the application error code specified in ERR.5 corresponded with the English message "The patient has a remaining deductable of {0, number, currency} for the period ending {1, date, medium}.", and the first two repetitions of ERR.6 were "250" and "20021231", then a receiving application in the U.S. would display the message as "The patient has a remaining deductable of \$250.00 for the period ending Dec 31, 2002."

2.15.5.7 ERR-7 Diagnostic Information (TX) 01817

Definition: Information that may be used by help desk or other support personnel to diagnose a problem.

2.15.5.8 ERR-8 User Message (TX) 01818

Definition: The text message to be displayed to the application user.

Example:

|This program is having trouble communicating with another system. Please contact the help desk.|

This differs from the actual error code and may provide more diagnostic information.

2.15.5.9 ERR-9 Inform Person Indicator (IS) 01819

Definition: A code to indicate who (if anyone) should be informed of the error. This field may also be used to indicate that a particular person should NOT be informed of the error (e.g. Do not inform patient). Refer to *User-defined table 0517- Inform Person Code* for suggested values.

Health Level Seven, Version 2.5.1 $\ensuremath{\text{@}}$ 2007. All rights reserved

⁴ Details on MessageFormat can be found at http://java.sun.com/products/jdk/1.2/docs/api/java/text/MessageFormat.html.

User-defined Table 0517 – Inform person code

Value	Description	Comment
PAT	Inform patient	
NPAT	Do NOT inform patient	
USR	Inform User	
HD	Inform help desk	

2.15.5.10 ERR-10 Override Type (CWE) 01820

Components: <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^ <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>

Definition: Identifies what type of override can be used to override the specific error identified. Refer to *User-defined table 0518 Override Type* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0518 – Override type

Value	Description	Comment
EXTN	Extension Override	Identifies an override where a service is being performed for longer than the ordered period of time.
INLV	Interval Override	Identifies an override where a repetition of service is being performed sooner than the ordered frequency.
EQV	Equivalence Override	Identifies an override where a service is being performed against an order that the system does not recognize as equivalent to the ordered service.

2.15.5.11 ERR-11 Override Reason Code (CWE) 01821

Components: <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^ <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>

Definition: Provides a list of potential override codes that can be used to override enforcement of the application rule that generated the error. Refer to *User-defined table 0519 – Override Reason* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0519 - Override reason

Value	Description	Comment
•••	No suggested values	

2.15.5.12 ERR-12 Help Desk Contact Point (XTN) 01822

Components: <DEPRECATED-Telephone Number (ST)> ^ <Telecommunication Use Code (ID)> ^ <Telecommunication Equipment Type (ID)> ^ <Email Address (ST)> ^ <Country Code (NM)> ^ <Area/City Code (NM)> ^ <Local Number (NM)> ^ <Extension (NM)> ^ <Any Text (ST)> ^ <Extension Prefix (ST)> ^ <Speed Dial Code (ST)> ^ <Unformatted Telephone number (ST)>

Definition: Lists phone, e-mail, fax, and other relevant numbers for helpdesk support related to the specified error.

2.15.6 FHS - file header segment

The FHS segment is used to head a file (group of batches) as defined in Section 2.10.3, "HL7 batch protocol".

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	1	ST	R			00067	File Field Separator
2	4	ST	R			00068	File Encoding Characters
3	227	HD	0			00069	File Sending Application
4	227	HD	0			00070	File Sending Facility
5	227	HD	0			00071	File Receiving Application
6	227	HD	0			00072	File Receiving Facility
7	26	TS	0			00073	File Creation Date/Time
8	40	ST	0			00074	File Security
9	20	ST	0			00075	File Name/ID
10	80	ST	0			00076	File Header Comment
11	20	ST	0			00077	File Control ID
12	20	ST	0			00078	Reference File Control ID

HL7 Attribute Table - FHS - File Header

2.15.6.0 FHS field definitions

2.15.6.1 FHS-1 File Field Separator (ST) 00067

Definition: This field has the same definition as the corresponding field in the MSH segment.

2.15.6.2 FHS-2 File Encoding Characters (ST) 00068

Definition: This field has the same definition as the corresponding field in the MSH segment.

2.15.6.3 FHS-3 File Sending Application (HD) 00069

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field has the same definition as the corresponding field in the MSH segment.

2.15.6.4 FHS-4 File Sending Facility (HD) 00070

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field has the same definition as the corresponding field in the MSH segment.

2.15.6.5 FHS-5 File Receiving Application (HD) 00071

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field has the same definition as the corresponding field in the MSH segment.

2.15.6.6 FHS-6 File Receiving Facility (HD) 00072

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field has the same definition as the corresponding field in the MSH segment.

2.15.6.7 FHS-7 File Creation Date/Time (TS) 00073

```
Components: <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field has the same definition as the corresponding field in the MSH segment.

2.15.6.8 FHS-8 File Security (ST) 00074

Definition: This field has the same definition as the corresponding field in the MSH segment.

2.15.6.9 FHS-9 File Name/ID (ST) 00075

Definition: This field can be used by the application processing file. Its use is not further specified.

2.15.6.10 FHS-10 File Header Comment (ST) 00076

Definition: This field contains the free text field, the use of which is not further specified.

2.15.6.11 FHS-11 File Control ID (ST) 00077

Definition: This field is used to identify a particular file uniquely. It can be echoed back in *FHS-12-reference file control ID*.

2.15.6.12 FHS-12 Reference File Control ID (ST) 00078

Definition: This field contains the value of *FHS-11-file control ID* when this file was originally transmitted. Not present if this file is being transmitted for the first time.

2.15.7 FTS - file trailer segment

The FTS segment defines the end of a file.

HL7 Attribute Table - FTS - File Trailer

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	10	NM	0			00079	File Batch Count
2	80	ST	0			08000	File Trailer Comment

2.15.7.0 FTS field definitions

2.15.7.1 FTS-1 File Batch Count (NM) 00079

Definition: This field contains the number of batches contained in this file.

2.15.7.2 FTS-2 File Trailer Comment (ST) 00080

Definition: The use of this free text field is not further specified.

2.15.8 MSA - message acknowledgment segment

The MSA segment contains information sent while acknowledging another message.

HL7 Attribute Table - MSA - Message Acknowledgment

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	2	ID	R		8000	00018	Acknowledgment Code
2	20	ST	R			00010	Message Control ID
3	80	ST	В			00020	Text Message
4	15	NM	0			00021	Expected Sequence Number
5			W			00022	Delayed Acknowledgment Type
6	250	CE	В		0357	00023	Error Condition

2.15.8.0 MSA field definitions

2.15.8.1 MSA-1 Acknowledgment Code (ID) 00018

Definition: This field contains an acknowledgment code, see message processing rules. Refer to *HL7 Table 0008 - Acknowledgment code* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0008 - Acknowledgment code

Value	Description	Comment
AA	Original mode: Application Accept - Enhanced mode: Application acknowledgment: Accept	
AE	Original mode: Application Error - Enhanced mode: Application acknowledgment: Error	
AR	Original mode: Application Reject - Enhanced mode: Application acknowledgment: Reject	
CA	Enhanced mode: Accept acknowledgment: Commit Accept	
CE	Enhanced mode: Accept acknowledgment: Commit Error	
CR	Enhanced mode: Accept acknowledgment: Commit Reject	

2.15.8.2 MSA-2 Message Control ID (ST) 00010

Definition: This field contains the message control ID of the message sent by the sending system. It allows the sending system to associate this response with the message for which it is intended.

2.15.8.3 MSA-3 Text Message (ST) 00020

Definition: This optional field further describes an error condition. This text may be printed in error logs or presented to an end user.

The MSA-3 was deprecated as of v 2.4. The reader is referred to the ERR segment. The ERR segment allows for richer descriptions of the erroneous conditions.

2.15.8.4 MSA-4 Expected Sequence Number (NM) 00021

Definition: This optional numeric field is used in the sequence number protocol.

2.15.8.5 MSA-5 Delayed Acknowledgment Type 00022

Attention: The MSA-5 was deprecated as of v2.2 and the detail was withdrawn and removed from the standard as of v 2.5.

2.15.8.6 MSA-6 Error Condition (CE) 00023

```
Components: <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^ <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
```

Definition: This field allows the acknowledging system to use a user-defined error code to further specify AR or AE type acknowledgments.

The MSA-6 was deprecated as of v2.4. The reader is referred to the ERR segment. The ERR segment allows for richer descriptions of the erroneous conditions.

Refer to HL7 Table 0357 - Message Error Condition Codes for valid values.

2.15.9 MSH - message header segment

The MSH segment defines the intent, source, destination, and some specifics of the syntax of a message.

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	1	ST	R			00001	Field Separator
2	4	ST	R			00002	Encoding Characters
3	227	HD	0		0361	00003	Sending Application
4	227	HD	0		0362	00004	Sending Facility
5	227	HD	0		0361	00005	Receiving Application
6	227	HD	0		0362	00006	Receiving Facility
7	26	TS	R			00007	Date/Time Of Message
8	40	ST	0			80000	Security
9	15	MSG	R			00009	Message Type
10	20	ST	R			00010	Message Control ID
11	3	PT	R			00011	Processing ID
12	60	VID	R			00012	Version ID
13	15	NM	0			00013	Sequence Number
14	180	ST	0			00014	Continuation Pointer
15	2	ID	0		0155	00015	Accept Acknowledgment Type
16	2	ID	0		0155	00016	Application Acknowledgment Type
17	3	ID	0		0399	00017	Country Code
18	16	ID	0	Υ	0211	00692	Character Set
19	250	CE	0			00693	Principal Language Of Message
20	20	ID	0		0356	01317	Alternate Character Set Handling Scheme
21	427	EI	0	Υ		01598	Message Profile Identifier

HL7 Attribute Table - MSH - Message Header

2.15.9.0 MSH field definitions

2.15.9.1 MSH-1 Field Separator (ST) 00001

Definition: This field contains the separator between the segment ID and the first real field, *MSH-2-encoding characters*. As such it serves as the separator and defines the character to be used as a separator for the rest of the message. Recommended value is |, (ASCII 124).

2.15.9.2 MSH-2 Encoding Characters (ST) 00002

Definition: This field contains the four characters in the following order: the component separator, repetition separator, escape character, and subcomponent separator. Recommended values are ^~\& (ASCII 94, 126, 92, and 38, respectively). See Section 2.5.4, "Message delimiters'.

2.15.9.3 MSH-3 Sending Application (HD) 00003

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field uniquely identifies the sending application among all other applications within the network enterprise. The network enterprise consists of all those applications that participate in the exchange of HL7 messages within the enterprise. Entirely site-defined. *User-defined Table 0361- Application* is used as the user-defined table of values for the first component.

User-defined Table 0361 - Application

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values defined	

Note:By site agreement, implementers may continue to use User-defined Table 0300 – Namespace ID for the first component.

2.15.9.4 MSH-4 Sending Facility (HD) 00004

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field further describes the sending application, *MSH-3-sending application*. With the promotion of this field to an HD data type, the usage has been broadened to include not just the sending facility but other organizational entities such as a) the organizational entity responsible for sending application; b) the responsible unit; c) a product or vendor's identifier, etc. Entirely site-defined. *User-defined Table 0362 - Facility* is used as the HL7 identifier for the user-defined table of values for the first component.

User-defined Table 0362 - Facility

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values defined	

Note: By site agreement, implementers may continue to use User-defined Table 0300 – Namespace ID for the first component.

2.15.9.5 MSH-5 Receiving Application (HD) 00005

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field uniquely identifies the receiving application among all other applications within the network enterprise. The network enterprise consists of all those applications that participate in the exchange of HL7 messages within the enterprise. Entirely site-defined *User-defined Table 0361- Application* is used as the HL7 identifier for the user-defined table of values for the first component.

Note: By site agreement, implementers may continue to use User-defined Table 0300 – Namespace ID for the first component.

2.15.9.6 MSH-6 Receiving Facility (HD) 00006

```
Components: <Namespace ID (IS)> ^ <Universal ID (ST)> ^ <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the receiving application among multiple identical instances of the application running on behalf of different organizations. *User-defined Table 0362 - Facility* is used as the HL7 identifier for the user-defined table of values for the first component. Entirely site-defined.

Note: By site agreement, implementers may continue to use User-defined Table 0300 – Namespace ID for the first component.

2.15.9.7 MSH-7 Date/Time Of Message (TS) 00007

```
Components: <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the date/time that the sending system created the message. If the time zone is specified, it will be used throughout the message as the default time zone.

Note: This field was made required in version 2.4. Messages with versions prior to 2.4 are not required to value this field. This usage supports backward compatibility.

2.15.9.8 MSH-8 Security (ST) 00008

Definition: In some applications of HL7, this field is used to implement security features. Its use is not yet further specified.

2.15.9.9 MSH-9 Message Type (MSG) 00009

```
Components: <Message Code (ID)> ^ <Trigger Event (ID)> ^ <Message Structure (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the message type, trigger event, and the message structure ID for the message.

Refer to *HL7 Table 0076 - Message type* for valid values for the message type code. This table contains values such as ACK, ADT, ORM, ORU etc.

Refer to *HL7 Table 0003 - Event type* for valid values for the trigger event. This table contains values like A01, O01, R01 etc.

Refer to *HL7 Table 0354 - Message structure* for valid values for the message structure. This table contains values such as ADT_A01, ORU_R01, SIU_S12, etc. .

The receiving system uses this field to recognize the data segments, and possibly, the application to which to route this message. For certain queries, which may have more than a single response event type, the second component may, in the response message, vary to indicate the response event type. See the discussion of the display query variants in chapter 5.

2.15.9.10 MSH-10 Message Control ID (ST) 00010

Definition: This field contains a number or other identifier that uniquely identifies the message. The receiving system echoes this ID back to the sending system in the Message acknowledgment segment (MSA).

2.15.9.11 MSH-11 Processing ID (PT) 00011

```
Components: <Processing ID (ID)> ^ <Processing Mode (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is used to decide whether to process the message as defined in HL7 Application (level 7) Processing rules.

2.15.9.12 MSH-12 Version ID (VID) 00012

Subcomponents for Internationalization Code (CE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Subcomponents for International Version ID (CE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Definition: This field is matched by the receiving system to its own version to be sure the message will be interpreted correctly. Beginning with Version 2.3.1, it has two additional "internationalization" components, for use by HL7 international affiliates. The <internationalization code> is CE data type (using the ISO country codes where appropriate) which represents the HL7 affiliate. The <internal version ID> is used if the HL7 Affiliate has more than a single 'local' version associated with a single US version. The <international version ID> has a CE data type, since the table values vary for each HL7 Affiliate.

Value	Description	Comment (Date)
2.0	Release 2.0	September 1988
2.0D	Demo 2.0	October 1988
2.1	Release 2. 1	March 1990
2.2	Release 2.2	December 1994
2.3	Release 2.3	March 1997
2.3.1	Release 2.3.1	May 1999
2.4	Release 2.4	November 2000
2.5	Release 2.5	May 2003
2.5.1	Release 2.5.1	January 2007

HL7 Table 0104 - Version ID

2.15.9.13 MSH-13 Sequence Number (NM) 00013

Definition: A non-null value in this field implies that the sequence number protocol is in use. This numeric field is incremented by one for each subsequent value.

2.15.9.14 MSH-14 Continuation Pointer (ST) 00014

Definition: This field is used to define continuations in application-specific ways.

Only the sender of a fragmented message values this field.

2.15.9.15 MSH-15 Accept Acknowledgment Type (ID) 00015

Definition: This field identifies the conditions under which accept acknowledgments are required to be returned in response to this message. Required for enhanced acknowledgment mode. Refer to *HL7 Table 0155 - Accept/application acknowledgment conditions* for valid values.

2.15.9.16 MSH-16 Application Acknowledgment Type (ID) 00016

Definition: This field contains the conditions under which application acknowledgments are required to be returned in response to this message. Required for enhanced acknowledgment mode.

The following table contains the possible values for MSH-15-accept acknowledgment type and MSH-16-application acknowledgment type:

HL7 Table 0155 - Accept/application acknowle	dgment conditions
--	-------------------

Value	Description	Comment
AL	Always	
NE	Never	
ER	Error/reject conditions only	
SU	Successful completion only	

Note: If *MSH-15-accept acknowledgment type* and *MSH-16-application acknowledgment type* are omitted (or are both null), the original acknowledgment mode rules are used.

2.15.9.17 MSH-17 Country Code (ID) 00017

Definition: This field contains the country of origin for the message. It will be used primarily to specify default elements, such as currency denominations. The values to be used are those of ISO 3166,.⁵. The ISO 3166 table has three separate forms of the country code: HL7 specifies that the 3-character (alphabetic) form be used for the country code.

Refer to *HL7 Table 0399 – Country code* for the 3-character codes as defined by ISO 3166-1.

HL7 Table 0399 - Country code

Value	Description	Comment
	use 3-character (alphabetic) form of ISO 3166	

2.15.9.18 MSH-18 Character Set (ID) 00692

Definition: This field contains the character set for the entire message. Refer to *HL7 Table 0211 - Alternate character sets* for valid values.

An HL7 message uses field *MSH-18-character set* to specify the character set(s) in use. Valid values for this field are specified in HL7 Table 0211, "Alternate Character Sets". *MSH-18-character set* may be left blank, or may contain one or more values delimited by the repetition separator. If the field is left blank, the character set in use is understood to be the 7-bit ASCII set, decimal 0 through decimal 127 (hex 00 through hex 7F). This default value may also be explicitly specified as **ASCII**.

More than one character set may be used in a message. The first occurrence, if supplied, of the MSH-18 must indicate the default encoding of the message. The second and subsequent occurrences of *MSH-18-character set* are used to specify additional character sets that are used.

The repetitions of this field to specify different character sets apply only to fields of the FT, ST and TX data types. See also section 2.7.2, "Escape sequences supporting multiple character sets".

Any encoding system, single-byte or multi-byte, may be specified as the default character encoding in *MSH-18-character set*. If the default encoding is other than 7-bit ASCII, sites shall document this usage in the dynamic conformance profile or other implementation agreement. This is particularly effective in

⁵ Available from ISO 1 Rue de Varembe, Case Postale 56, CH 1211, Geneve, Switzerland

promoting interoperability between nations belonging to different HL7 Affiliates, while limiting the amount of testing required to determine the encoding of a message.

By using built-in language functions for string and character manipulation, parsers and applications need not be concerned whether a single or double byte character set is in use, provided it is applied to the entire message. Using a built in function to extract the fourth CHARACTER will always yield the field separator character, regardless of coding set. On the other hand, if the parser looks at the fourth BYTE, it is then limited to single byte character sets, since the fourth byte would contain the low order 8 bits of the character S in a double-byte system.

Note: When describing encoding rules, this standard always speaks in terms of character position, not byte offset. Similarly, comparisons should be done on character values, not their byte equivalents. For this reason, delimiter characters should always have representation in the standard 7-bit ASCII character set, regardless of the actual character set being used, so that a search for the character CR (carriage return) can be performed.

HL7 Table 0211 - Alternate character sets

Value	Description	Comment
ASCII	The printable 7-bit ASCII character set.	(This is the default if this field is omitted)
8859/1	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/1 Character set	
8859/2	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/2 Character set	
8859/3	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/3 Character set	
8859/4	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/4 Character set	
8859/5	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/5 Character set	
8859/6	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/6 Character set	
8859/7	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/7 Character set	
8859/8	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/8 Character set	
8859/9	The printable characters from the ISO 8859/9 Character set	
ISO IR14	Code for Information Exchange (one byte)(JIS X 0201-1976).	Note that the code contains a space, i.e. "ISO IR14".
ISO IR87	Code for the Japanese Graphic Character set for information interchange (JIS X 0208-1990),	Note that the code contains a space, i.e. "ISO IR87".
		The JIS X 0208 needs an escape sequence. In Japan, the escape technique is ISO 2022. From basic ASCII, escape sequence "escape" \$ B (in HEX, 1B 24 42) lets the parser know that following bytes should be handled 2-byte wise. Back to ASCII is 1B 28 42.
ISO IR159	Code of the supplementary Japanese Graphic Character set for information interchange (JIS X 0212-1990).	Note that the code contains a space, i.e. "ISO IR159".
GB 18030-2000	Code for Chinese Character Set (GB 18030-2000)	Does not need an escape sequence.
KS X 1001	Code for Korean Character Set (KS X 1001)	
CNS 11643-1992	Code for Taiwanese Character Set (CNS 11643-1992)	Does not need an escape sequence.

Value	Description	Comment
BIG-5	Code for Taiwanese Character Set (BIG-5)	Does not need an escape sequence.
		BIG-5 does not need an escape sequence. ASCII is a 7 bit character set, which means that the top bit of the byte is "0". The parser knows that when the top bit of the byte is "0", the character set is ASCII. When it is "1", the following bytes should be handled as 2 bytes (or more). No escape technique is needed. However, since some servers do not correctly interpret when they receive a top bit "1", it is advised, in internet RFC, to not use these kind of non-safe non-escape extension.
UNICODE	The world wide character standard from ISO/IEC 10646-1-19936	Deprecated. Retained for backward compatibility only as v 2.5. Replaced by specific Unicode encoding codes.
UNICODE UTF-8	UCS Transformation Format, 8-bit form	UTF-8 is a variable-length encoding, each code value is represented by 1,2 or 3 bytes, depending on the code value. 7 bit ASCII is a proper subset of UTF-8. Note that the code contains a space before UTF but not before and after the hyphen.
UNICODE UTF-16	UCS Transformation Format, 16-bit form	UTF-16 is identical to ISO/IEC 10646 UCS-2. Note that the code contains a space before UTF but not before and after the hyphen.
UNICODE UTF-32	UCS Transformation Format, 32-bit form	UTF-32 is defined by Unicode Technical Report #19, and is an officially recognized encoding as of Unicode Version 3.1. UTF-32 is a proper subset of ISO/IEC 10646 UCS-4. Note that the code contains a space before UTF but not before and after the hyphen.

- a) if the field is not valued, the default single-byte character set (ASCII ("ISO IR6")) should be assumed. No other character sets are allowed in the message.
- b) if the field repeats, but the first element is NULL (i.e., present but unvalued), the single-byte ASCII ("ISO IR6") is assumed as the default character set.
- c) elements in the remainder of the sequence (i.e., elements 2..n) are alternate character sets that may be used.

The reader is referred to the following references for background information on character sets and encodings:

- Unicode Technical Report #17 Character Encoding Model (http://www.unicode.org/unicode/reports/tr17/)
- Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0 (Second Edition), Section F Autodetection of Character Encodings (http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml#sec-guessing)

2.15.9.18.1 Alphabetic Languages Other Than English

The first occurrence of *MSH-18-character set* may reference a character set other than 7-bit ASCII. Western alphabetic languages other than English are accommodated by the ISO 8859 series of character encodings. For example, if *MSH-18-character set* is valued **8859/1**, the ISO character set commonly known as "8-bit ASCII" is in use in the message. This includes all values from decimal 0 through decimal 127 (hex 00 through hex 7F), plus an additional 128 values from decimal 128 through decimal 255 (hex 80 through

⁶ Available from The Unicode Consortium, P.O. Box 700519, San Jose, CA 95170-0519. See http://www/unicode.org/unicode/consortium/consort.html

hex FF). The latter values include the accented Latin letters used in common Western European languages, plus some symbolic values such as the paragraph mark (¶) and the trademark symbol (TM).

Other ISO character sets in the 8859 series accommodate non-Latin character sets. For example, *MSH-18-character set* may be valued **8859/2** to specify the default character encoding in use in Eastern Europe, while **8859/6** indicates the use of the Arabic alphabet.

The ASCII and ISO character sets all allow the specification of any character in a single byte.

2.15.9.18.2 Non-Alphabetic Languages

HL7 Table 0211 includes values for languages that do not use alphabets. These include ideographic written languages, such as the Japanese Graphic Character Set which is specified as **ISO IR87**.

There are non-alphabetic encoding systems for which HL7 Table 0211 does not provide specific entries. One of these is the Traditional Chinese character set, CNS 11643, which is used in Taiwan. This character set can, however, be encoded using the Unicode Standard, which does have a value in HL7 0211.

The Unicode Standard (which is now coordinated with ISO 10646) permits the specification of multiple-byte characters in a much larger range than is available in a single-byte ASCII or ISO character set. Unicode Version 3.1 (http://www.unicode.org) includes almost 100,000 characters, including many Chinese, Japanese, and Korean ideographs. This is particularly valuable to implementers who need to encode messages in more than one character set, as for example to accommodate the use of both alphabetic and ideographic characters.

Non-alphabetic encoding systems do not restrict characters to a length of one byte. Unicode incorporates three encoding forms that allow for the use of multiple bytes to encode a message. The most flexible Unicode encoding form is UTF-8, which uses high-order bits to specify the number of bytes (from one to six) used to encode each character.

Interestingly, Unicode UTF-8 incorporates the 7-bit ASCII character set as single-byte codes. This means that a message encoded in 7-bit ASCII can be submitted to a destination using Unicode UTF- 8 with no modification.

2.15.9.19 MSH-19 Principal Language of Message (CE) 00693

Definition: This field contains the principal language of the message. Codes come from ISO 639.

2.15.9.20 MSH-20 Alternate Character Set Handling Scheme (ID) 01317

Definition: When any alternative character sets are used (as specified in the second or later iterations of *MSH-18 character sets*), and if any special handling scheme is needed, this component is to specify the scheme used, according to *HL7 Table 0356- Alternate character set handling scheme* as defined below:

Value	Description	Comment
ISO 2022- 1994	This standard is titled "Information Technology - Character Code Structure and Extension Technique"	This standard specifies an escape sequence from basic one byte character set to specified other character set, and vice versa. The escape sequence explicitly specifies what alternate character set to be evoked. Note that in this mode, the actual ASCII escape character is used as defined in the referenced ISO document. As noted in 1.7.1, escape sequences to/from alternate character set should occur within HL7 delimiters. In other words, HL7 delimiters are basic one byte characters only, and just before and just after delimiters, character encoding status should be the basic one byte set.
2.3	The character set switching mode specified in HL7 2.5, section 2.7.2, "Escape sequences supporting multiple character sets" and section 2.A.46, "XPN – extended person name".	Note that the escape sequences used in this mode do not use the ASCII "esc" character, as defined in ISO 2022-1994. They are "HL7 escape sequences" as first defined in HL7 2.3, sec. 2.9.2. (Also, note that sections 2.8.28.6.1and 2.9.2 in HL7 2.3 correspond to sections 2.16.93 and 2.7.2 in HL7 2.5.)
<null></null>	This is the default, indicating that there is no character set switching occurring in this message.	This is the default.

HL7 Table 0356 - Alternate character set handling scheme

2.15.9.21 MSH-21 Message Profile Identifier (EI) 01598

Definition: Sites may use this field to assert adherence to, or reference, a message profile. Message profiles contain detailed explanations of grammar, syntax, and usage for a particular message or set of messages. See section 2.12, "Conformance Using Message Profiles".

Repetition of this field allows more flexibility in creating and naming message profiles. Using repetition, this field can identify a set of message profiles that the message conforms to. For example, the first repetition could reference a vendor's message profile. The second could reference another compatible provider's profile or a later version of the first vendor profile.

As of v2.5, the HL7 message profile identifiers might be used for conformance claims and/or publish/subscribe systems. Refer to sections 2.12.1.1, "Message profile identifier" and 2.12.1.2, "Message profile publish/subscribe topics" for details of the message profile identifiers. Refer to sections 2.12.4.1, "Static definition identifier" and 2.12.4.2, "Static definition publish/subscribe topics" for details of the static definition identifiers.

Prior to v2.5, the field was called Conformance Statement ID. For backward compatibility, the Conformance Statement ID can be used here. Examples of the use of Conformance Statements appear in Chapter 5, "Query."

2.15.10 NTE - notes and comments segment

The NTE segment is defined here for inclusion in messages defined in other chapters. It is commonly used for sending notes and comments.

The technical committees define the meaning of the NTE segments within the context of the messages in their chapters. For each NTE, the description in the message attribute table should include an indication of the segment associated with the NTE, for example "Notes and Comments for the PID".

SEQ LEN DT OPT TBL# ITEM **ELEMENT NAME** 4 SI 0 00096 Set ID - NTE 1 0 00097 2 8 ID 0105 Source of Comment 3 6553 FT 0 Υ 00098 Comment 6 250 CE 0 0364 01318 Comment Type

HL7 Attribute Table - NTE - Notes and Comments

2.15.10.0 NTE field definitions

2.15.10.1 NTE-1 Set ID - NTE (SI) 00096

Definition: This field may be used where multiple NTE segments are included in a message. Their numbering must be described in the application message definition.

2.15.10.2 NTE-2 Source of comment (ID) 00097

Definition: This field is used when source of comment must be identified. This table may be extended locally during implementation. Refer to *HL7 Table 0105 - Source of comment* for valid values.

Value	Description	Comment
L	Ancillary (filler) department is source of comment	
Р	Orderer (placer) is source of comment	
0	Other system is source of comment	

HL7 Table 0105 - Source of comment

2.15.10.3 NTE-3 Comment (FT) 00098

Definition: This field contains the comment contained in the segment.

Note: As of v2.2, this field uses the FT rather than a TX data type. Since there is no difference between an FT data type without any embedded formatting commands, and a TX data type, this change is compatible with the previous version.

2.15.10.4 NTE-4 Comment Type (CE) 01318

Components: <Identifier (ST)> $^$ <Text (ST)> $^$ <Name of Coding System (ID)> $^$ <Alternate Identifier (ST)> $^$ <Alternate Text (ST)> $^$ <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>

Definition: This field contains a value to identify the type of comment text being sent in the specific comment record. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0364 - Comment Type* for suggested values.

		7 1
Value	Description	Comment
PI	Patient Instructions	
Al	Ancillary Instructions	
GI	General Instructions	
1R	Primary Reason	
2R	Secondary Reason	
GR	General Reason	
RE	Remark	

User-defined Table 0364 - Comment type

Value	Description	Comment
DR	Duplicate/Interaction	
	Reason	

Note: A field already exists on the NTE record that identifies the Sources of Comment (e.g., ancillary, placer, other). However some applications need to support other types of comment text (e.g., instructions, reason, remarks, etc.). A separate NTE segment can be used for each type of comment (e.g., instructions are on one NTE and remarks on another NTE).

2.15.11 OVR – override segment

Definition: This segment allows a sender to override specific receiving application's business rules to allow for processing of a message that would normally be rejected or ignored.

In many instances, business rules will be set as guidelines relative to patient care. In some instances it is in the patient's better interest to circumvent these guidelines. In other cases, business rules may exist to support normal process flow, but which may be bypassed or ignored under certain special circumstances. This segment is linked to the proposed ERR segment changes in that the first attempt to process a transaction that violates a business rule may result in an error that must be overridden. The ERR provides a mechanism to identify errors that may be overridden, as well as the allowed override codes.

Use case #1: A patient has received a prescription with a duration of 30 days and receives the full amount at their pharmacy. While at home the patient accidentally spills the container and spoils a significant proportion of the prescription. The patient returns to their pharmacy and explains the situation to the pharmacy technician. The technician consults with their supervising pharmacist. Knowing the patient, the pharmacist decides to override the business rule stating that the dispensed amount for a prescription may not exceed the prescribed amount. In recording the decision, the pharmacy technician specifies that the **Override Type** is a "Compassionate Refill" and that the **Override Code**, or reason for the override, is "Spoilage". The technician also provides **Override Comments** to provide an explanation of the situation for future reference. While recording the decision, the technician's user ID is automatically stored in an **Override Recorded By** field. The pharmacist's ID is stored in the **Override Responsible Provider** field.

Use case #2:A hospital wishes to submit an invoice to an insurer who is providing secondary coverage. The invoice is being submitted over a week after the service was performed, which is outside the insurer's normal accept time window. The insurer would normally reject the invoice. However, the submitter includes an **Override Type** of "late submission" as well as an **Override Code** indicating that the invoice is late due to delays with the primary payor. The secondary insurer examines the override reason and accepts the invoice.

Usage Note: The override segment should be included in messages adjacent to the segment(s) containing the information that would trigger the business rule(s) that needs to be overridden. The segment should be optional (you shouldn't always need to override business rules), and should be allowed to repeat in circumstances where there may be more than one business rule overridden at the same time. Committees may wish to provide suggested values for override types or codes for use with the OVR segment in different messages.

The following is an example of how the OVR segment might be used in a dispense message (RDS 013):

$$\label{eq:msh_pid} \mbox{MSH PID PV1 } \{\mbox{ORC RXE } \{\mbox{RXR}\} \mbox{ RXC> }$$

HL7 Attribute Table – OVR – Override Segment

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME	
1	705	CWE	0		0518	01829	Business Rule Override Type	
2	705	CWE	0		0521	01830	Business Rule Override Code	

Page 2-84

Health Level Seven, Version 2.5.1 © 2007. All rights reserved.

April 2007. Final Standard.

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
3	200	TX	0			01831	Override Comments
4	250	XCN	0			01832	Override Entered By
5	250	XCN	0			01833	Override Authorized By

2.15.11.0 OVR field definitions

2.15.11.1 OVR-1 Business Rule Override Type (CNE) 01829

```
Components: <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^ <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: Identifies what type of business rule override is being performed. Refer to *User-defined Table 0518 - Override Type* for suggested values. Given that an application provides end users with the ability to override business rules, there must be a way to communicate what business rule is being overridden.

2.15.11.2 OVR-2 Business Rule Override Code (CWE) 01830

```
Components: <Identifier (ST)> ^ <Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Coding System (ID)> ^ <Alternate Identifier (ST)> ^ <Alternate Text (ST)> ^ <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> ^ <Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> ^ <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: Indicates the reason for the business rule override. Refer to *User-Defined Table 0521 – Override Code* for suggested values.

If users are allowed to override business rules in an application, the user will typically need to provide a reason why the rule is being overridden. The Override Code field in this segment will provide the mechanism to transmit a coded reason.

User-defined Table 0521 - Override code

Value	Description	Comment
	No suggested values	

2.15.11.3 OVR-3 Override Comments (TX) 01831

Definition: Additional descriptive comments detailing the circumstances of the override.

When overriding a business rule there may be special circumstances that require a further explanation of the override action. The Override Comments field will allow users to provide more specific information in a free text format.

2.15.11.4 OVR-4 Override Entered By (XCN) 01832

Components: <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^ <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^ <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^ <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Final Standard. April 2007.

```
Subcomponents for Family Name (FN): <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own
           Surname (ST)> & <Surname Prefix From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From
           Partner/Spouse (ST)>
Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
           & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
           & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
Subcomponents for Name Context (CE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
           Coding System (ID)> & <alternate Identifier (ST)> & <alternate Text (ST)>
           & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR): <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
           <Range End Date/Time (TS)>
           Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents
Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
           (ID)>
Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
           Precision (ID)>
Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
           <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate</pre>
           Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
           Version ID (ST)> & <Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
           Text (ST)>
Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
           (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
           <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding</pre>
           System Version ID (ST)> & <alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &
           <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: Identifies the user entering the override in the system.

When a business rule is overridden, an application must be able to link the override with the user who made it in order to provide a complete audit history of the transaction, especially when there may be a risk associated with the override. In situations where the original message was submitted by batch, the overriding user may be different than the original author of the message.

2.15.11.5 OVR-5 Override Authorized By (XCN) 01833

```
Components: <ID Number (ST)> ^ <Family Name (FN)> ^ <Given Name (ST)> ^ <Second and Further Given Names or Initials Thereof (ST)> ^ <Suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <Prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^ <Source Table (IS)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Name Type Code (ID)> ^ <Identifier Check Digit (ST)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^ <Name Context (CE)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR)> ^ <Name Assembly Order (ID)> ^ <Effective Date (TS)> ^ <Expiration Date (TS)> ^ <Professional Suffix (ST)> ^ <Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE)> ^ <Assigning Agency or Department (CWE)>

Subcomponents for Family Name (FN): <Surname (ST)> & <Own Surname Prefix (ST)> & <Own Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Surname From Partner/Spouse (ST)> & <Universal ID (ST)  & <Universal ID (ST)  & <Universal ID (ST)  & <Universal ID (ST)  & <Universal I
```

Page 2-86

Page 2-87

```
Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)>
           & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
Subcomponents for Name Context (CE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> & <Name of
           Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate Text (ST)>
           & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)>
Subcomponents for DEPRECATED-Name Validity Range (DR): <Range Start Date/Time (TS)> &
           <Range End Date/Time (TS)>
           Note subcomponent contains sub-subcomponents
Subcomponents for Effective Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision
           (ID)>
Subcomponents for Expiration Date (TS): <Time (DTM)> & <DEPRECATED-Degree of
           Precision (ID)>
Subcomponents for Assigning Jurisdiction (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text (ST)> &
           <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> & <Alternate</pre>
           Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding System
           Version ID (ST)> & <alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> & <Original
           Text (ST)>
Subcomponents for Assigning Agency or Department (CWE): <Identifier (ST)> & <Text
           (ST)> & <Name of Coding System (ID)> & <Alternate Identifier (ST)> &
           <Alternate Text (ST)> & <Name of Alternate Coding System (ID)> & <Coding</pre>
           System Version ID (ST)> & <a href="#">& Alternate Coding System Version ID (ST)> &</a>
           <Original Text (ST)>
```

Definition: Identifies the health services provider who accepts professional responsibility for overriding the business rule. This field should be left empty if the recording and responsible health care provider is the same as who entered the override.

In some cases, a business rule override may be entered by a data entry clerk on behalf of a health service provider who carries professional responsibility for the decision to override the rule. In order to represent this scenario, the segment must have a field identifying who is responsible for the override decision, in addition to the person recording the override.

2.15.12 SFT – software segment

Definition: This segment provides additional information about the software product(s) used as a Sending Application. The primary purpose of this segment is for diagnostic use. There may be additional uses per site-specific agreements.

Implementers are encouraged to use message profile identifiers (as found in 2.15.9.21, "MSH-21 Message Profile Identifier (EI) 01598") to control the behavior of the receiving application rather than relying on application or version information in the SFT segment.

For example, if software product A has versions 9 and 10 deployed in different Enterprise locations, the fact that they use different message types, segments, or fields should be reflected via their message profiles (see section 2.12). If there is an upgrade from version 10 to 10.1, this would be reflected in the SFT segment, but changes to the message contents should be reflected via a new/different conformance profile.

Use Case: An external application has been customized to communicate with a centralized patient drug history system. However, due to certain, known characteristics of the external software package, the centralized system must modify its behavior in order to process transactions correctly. In one example, the external application may have multiple versions in production. As such, the centralized application will need to know the name of the **Software Vendor Organization**, the **Software Release Number**, the

Final Standard. April 2007.

Software Product Name, and the **Software Binary ID** so that it can correctly identify the software submitting the transaction and modify its behavior appropriately.

While preparing a transaction for submission to a centralized system the sending application specifies its **Software Install Date** and its configuration settings (**Software Product Information**). While processing the transaction, the centralized system encounters an error. Upon examination of the error, install date and configuration of the software that sent the message, helpdesk staff are able to determine the sending application has not been updated to reflect recent application changes.

Use Case: In circumstances where a message is manipulated or modified by multiple systems, a repetition of this segment may be appended by each system.

Example:

```
MSH
[{ SFT }]
```

HL7 Attribute Table - SFT - Software Segment

SEQ	LEN	DT	ОРТ	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	567	XON	R			01834	Software Vendor Organization
2	15	ST	R			01835	Software Certified Version or Release Number
3	20	ST	R			01836	Software Product Name
4	20	ST	R			01837	Software Binary ID
5	1024	TX	0			01838	Software Product Information
6	26	TS	0			01839	Software Install Date

2.15.12.0 SFT field definitions

2.15.12.1 SFT-1 Software Vendor Organization (XON) 01834

```
Components: <Organization Name (ST)> ^ <Organization Name Type Code (IS)> ^ <DEPRECATED-ID Number (NM)> ^ <Check Digit (NM)> ^ <Check Digit Scheme (ID)> ^ <Assigning Authority (HD)> ^ <Identifier Type Code (ID)> ^ <Assigning Facility (HD)> ^ <Name Representation Code (ID)> ^ <Organization Identifier (ST)>

Subcomponents for Assigning Authority (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)> 
Subcomponents for Assigning Facility (HD): <Namespace ID (IS)> & <Universal ID (ST)> & <Universal ID Type (ID)>
```

Definition: Organization identification information for the software vendor that created this transaction. The purpose of this field, along with the remaining fields in this segment, is to provide a more complete picture of applications that are sending HL7 messages. The Software Vendor Organization field would allow the identification of the vendor who is responsible for maintaining the application.

2.15.12.2 SFT-2 Software Certified Version or Release Number (ST) 01835

Definition: Latest software version number of the sending system that has been compliance tested and accepted. Software Certified Version or Release Number helps to provide a complete picture of the application that is sending/receiving HL7 messages. Versions are important in identifying a specific 'release' of an application. In some situations, the receiving application validates the Software Certified

Version or Release Number against a list of "certified" versions/releases of the particular software to determine if the sending application adheres to specific business rules required by the receiving application.

Alternatively, the software may perform different processing depending on the version of the sending software

2.15.12.3 SFT-3 Software Product Name (ST) 01836

Definition: The name of the software product that submitted the transaction. A key component in the identification of an application is its Software Product Name. This is a key piece of information in identifying an application.

2.15.12.4 SFT-4 Software Binary ID (ST) 01837

Definition: Issued by a vendor for each unique software version instance to distinguish between like versions of the same software e.g., a checksum.

Software Binary Ids are issued for each unique software version instance. As such, this information helps to differentiate between differing versions of the same software. Identical Primary IDs indicate that the software is identical at the binary level (configuration settings may differ).

2.15.12.5 SFT-5 Software Product Information (TX) 01838

Definition: Software identification information that can be supplied by a software vendor with their transaction. Might include configuration settings, etc.

This field would contain any additional information an application provides with the transaction it has submitted. This information could be used for diagnostic purposes and provides greater flexibility in identifying a piece of software. Possibilities include setup or configuration parameter information.

This field should not be sent unless performing diagnostics.

2.15.12.6 SFT-6 Software Install Date (TS) 01839

```
Components: <Time (DTM)> ^ <DEPRECATED-Degree of Precision (ID)>
```

Definition: Date the submitting software was installed at the sending site.

A Software Install Date on its own can often provide key information about the behavior of the application, and is necessary to provide a complete picture of the sending application.

2.16 DATA TYPES

HL7 Table 0440 – Data types

Data type	Data Type Name	LEN	Category	Comment
AD	Address	415	Demographics	Replaced by XAD as of v 2.3
AUI	Authorization information	239		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 6.5.6.14 IN1-14, as of v 2.5.
CCD	Charge code and date	28		Replaces the CM data type used in section 4.5.2.1 BLG-1, as of v 2.5.
CCP	Channel calibration parameters	20		Replaces the CM data type used in 7.14.1.5 OBX-5.3 where

Data	Data Type Name	LEN	Category	Comment
type				OBX-5Observation value (*) is data type CD as of v 2.5.
CD	Channel definition	581	Specialty/Chapter Specific: waveform	For waveform data only;.
CE	Coded element	483	Code Values	Replaced by CNE and CWE as of v 2.3.1. Retained for backward compatibility only as of v 2.5.
CF	Coded element with formatted values	65536	Code Values	
CK	Composite ID with check digit		Code Values	Withdrawn
СМ	Composite		Generic	Withdrawn Replaced by numerous new unambiguous data types in v 2.5
CN	Composite ID number and name		Code Values	Withdrawn. Replaced by XCN as of v 2.3
CNE	Coded with no exceptions	705	Code Values	
CNS	Composite ID number and name simplified	406		Restores the original data type CN as was initially implementable in the CM used in sections 4.5.3.32 and 7.4.1.32-(OBR-32), 4.5.3.33 and 7.4.1.33 - (OBR-33) 4.5.3.34 and 7.4.1.35 - (OBR-34) 4.5.3.35 and 7.4.1.35 - (OBR-35). Components 7 and 8, however, have been promoted to data type IS to be consistent with current practice without violating backward compatibility.
CP	Composite price	543	Price Data	
CQ	Composite quantity with units	500	Numerical	CQ cannot be legally expressed when embedded within another data type. Its use is constrained to a segment field.
CSU	Channel sensitivity	490		Replaces the CM data type used in 7.14.1.5 OBX-5.3 where OBX-5Observation value (*) is data type CD as of v 2.5.
CWE	Coded with exceptions	705	Code Values	
CX	Extended composite ID with check digit	1913	Code Values	
DDI	Daily deductible information	25		Replaces the CM data type used in section 6.5.7.30 IN2-30, as of v 2.5.
DIN	Date and institution name	510		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 15.4.6.12 STF-12 and 15.4.6.14 STF-13, as of v 2.5.
DLD	Discharge to location and date	47		Replaces the CM data type used in section 8.8.4.9 – OM2-9, as of v 2.5
DLN	Driver's license number	66	Extended Queries	
DLT	Delta	45		
DR	Date/time range	53	Time Series	
DT	Date	8	Date/Time	
DTM DTN	Date/time Day type and number	6		Replaces the CM data type used in section 6.5.8.11 IN3-11, as of v 2.5.

D - 1	Data Tima Nama	,	Cotomore	Commont
Data type	Data Type Name	LEN	Category	Comment
ED	Encapsulated data	65536	Specialty/Chapter Specific	Supports ASCII MIME-encoding of binary data.
El	Entity identifier	427	Identifier	
EIP	Entity identifier pair	855		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 4.5.1.8 - ORC- 8, 4.5.3.29 - OBR-29, 7.3.1.29 - OBR-29, as of v 2.5.
LD	Error location and description	493		Replaces the CM data type used in 2.16.5.1 ERR-1 as of v 2.5. Retained for backward compatibility only as of v 2.5. Refer to ERR segment.
ERL	Error location	18		
FC	Financial class	47	Patient Administration /Financial Information	
FN	Family name	194	Demographics	Appears ONLY in the PPN, XCN, and XPN.
FT	Formatted text	65536	Alphanumeric	
GTS	General timing specification	199		
HD	Hierarchic designator	227	Identifier	
ICD	Insurance certification definition	40		Replaces the CM data type used in section 6.5.8.20 IN3-20, as of v 2.5.
ID	Coded values for HL7 tables	Variable	Identifier	
IS	Coded value for user-defined tables	20	Identifier	
JCC	Job code/class	292	Extended Queries	
LA1	Location with address variation 1	415		Replaces the CM data type used in 4.14.1.8 RXO-8 and 4.14.4.8 RXE-8 as of v 2.5. Retained for backward compatibility only as of v 2.5
LA2	Location with address variation 2	790		Replaces the CM data type used in 4.14.5.13 RXD-13, 4.14.6.11 RXG-11 and 4.14.7.11 RXA-11 as of v 2.5. Retained for backward compatibility only as of v 2.5,
MA	Multiplexed array	65536	Specialty/Chapter Specific: waveform	For waveform data only
MO	Money	20	Numerical	
MOC	Money and charge code	504		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 4.5.3.23 OBR-23 and 7.4.1.23- OBR-23 as of v 2.5.
МОР	Money or percentage	23		Replaces the CM data type used in section 6.5.8.5 IN3-5, as of v 2.5. This data type is restricted to this field.
MSG	Message type	15		Replaces the CM data type used in 2.16.9.9 MSH-9 as of v 2.5.
NA	Numeric array	65536	Specialty/Chapter Specific: waveform	For waveform data only
NDL	Name with location and date	835		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 4.5.3.32 and 7.4.1.32-(OBR-32) , 4.5.3.33

Data type	Data Type Name	LEN	Category	Comment
type				and 7.4.1.33 - (OBR-33) 4.5.3.34 and 7.4.1.34 - (OBR- 34) 4.5.3.35 and 7.4.1.35 - (OBR-35) as of v 2.5.
NM	Numeric	16	Numerical	
NR	Numeric range	33		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 8.8.4.6.1– OM2-6.1, 8.8.4.6.3– OM2-6.3and 8.8.4.6.4– OM2-6.4, as of v 2.5.
OCD	Occurrence code and date	714		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 6.5.10.10 UB1-16 and 6.5.11.7 UB2-7, as of v 2.5.
OSD	Order sequence definition	110		Replaces the CM data type used in the TQ data type, component 10, as of v 2.5.
OSP	Occurrence span code and date	723		Replaces the CM data type used in section 6.5.11.8 UB2-8, as of v 2.5.
PIP	Practitioner institutional privileges	1413		Replaces the CM data type used in 15.4.5.7 PRA-7 as of v 2.5.
PL	Person location	1230	Identifier	
PLN	Practitioner license or other ID number	101		Replaces the CM data type used in 15.4.5.6 PRA-6, 11.6.3.7 PRD-7 and 11.6.4.7 CTD-7 as of v 2.5.
PN	Person name	-	Demographics	Withdrawn
PPN	Performing person time stamp	2993	Medical Records/Informati on Management	equivalent of an XCN joined with a TS
PRL	Parent result link	755		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 4.5.3.26 - OBR-26 and 7.4.1.26 - OBR-26 as of v 2.5.
PT	Processing type	3	Identifier	
PTA	Policy type and amount	56		Replaces the CM data type used in section 6.5.7.29 IN2-29, as of v 2.5.
QIP	Query input parameter list	212	Extended Queries	
QSC	Query selection criteria	219	Extended Queries	
RCD	Row column definition	19	Extended Queries	
RFR	Reference range	352		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 8.8.4.6 – OM2-6, 8.8.4.7 – OM2-7 and8.8.4.8 – OM2-8 as of v 2.5.
RI	Repeat interval	206	Time Series	
RMC	Room coverage	82		Replaces the CM data type used in section 6.5.7.28 IN2-28, as of v 2.5.
RP	Reference pointer	273	Identifier	
RPT	Repeat pattern	984		
SAD	Street Address	184	Demographics Time Series	Appears ONLY in the XAD data type.
SCV	Scheduling class value pair Sequence ID	41	Time Series Numerical	For scheduling data only. See Chapter 10
SN	Structured numeric	36	Numerical	
SPD	Specialty description	112		Replaces the CM data type used in 15.4.5.5 PRA-5 as of v

Data type	Data Type Name	LEN	Category	Comment
				2.5.
SPS	Specimen source	4436		Replaces the CM data type used in 4.5.3.15 OBR-15, 7.4.1.15 OBR-15, 13.4.3.6 SAC-6 and 13.4.9.3 TCC-3 as of v 2.5. This data type is retained for backward compatibility only as on v 2.5,
SRT	Sort order	15	Alphanumeric	
ST	String	199	Alphanumeric	
TM	Time	16	Date/Time	
TN	Telephone number	199	Demographics	Withdrawn
TQ	Timing/quantity	1209	Time Series	Retained for backward compatibility only as of v 2.5.
TS	Time stamp	26	Date/Time	
TX	Text data	65536	Alphanumeric	
UVC	UB value code and amount	41		Replaces the CM data type used in sections 6.5.10.10 UB1-10 and 6.5.11.6 UB2-6, as of v 2.5.
VH	Visiting hours	41	Extended Queries	
VID	Version identifier	973	Identifier	
VR	Value range	13		Replaces the CM data type used in 5.10.5.3.11 QRD-11 as of v 2.5.
WVI	Channel Identifier	22		Replaces the CM data type used in 7.14.1.3.1 OBX-5.1 where OBX-5 Observation value (*) is data type CD as of v 2.5.
WVS	Waveform source	17		Replaces the CM data type used in 7.14.1.4 OBX-5.2 where OBX-5 Observation value (*) is data type CD as of v 2.5.
XAD	Extended address	631	Demographics	Replaces AD as of v 2.3
XCN	Extended composite ID number and name	3002	Code Values	Replaces CN as of v 2.3
XON	Extended composite name and ID number for organizations	567	Demographics	
XPN	Extended person name	1103	Demographics	Replaces PN as of v 2.3.
XTN	Extended telecommunications number	850	Demographics	Replaces TN as of v 2.3

2.17 MISCELLANEOUS HL7 TABLES USED ACROSS ALL CHAPTERS

2.17.1 Message type table

HL7 Table 0076 - Message type

Message	Description	Chapter
ACK	General acknowledgment message	2
ADR	ADT response	3
ADT	ADT message	3
BAR	Add/change billing account	6
CRM	Clinical study registration message	7
BPS	Blood product dispense status message	4

Message	Description	Chapter
BRP	Blood product dispense status acknowledgement message	4
BRT	Blood product transfusion/disposition acknowledgement message	4
BTS	Blood product transfusion/disposition message	4
CSU	Unsolicited study data message	7
DFT	Detail financial transactions	6
DOC	Document response	9
DSR	Display response	5
EAC	Automated equipment command message	13
EAN	Automated equipment notification message	13
EAR	Automated equipment response message	13
EDR	Enhanced display response	5
EQQ	Embedded query language query	5
ERP	Event replay response	5
ESR	Automated equipment status update acknowledgment message	13
ESU	Automated equipment status update message	13
INR	Automated equipment inventory request message	13
INU	Automated equipment inventory request message Automated equipment inventory update message	13
LSR	Automated equipment log/service request message	13
LSU		13
	Automated equipment log/service update message	
MCF	Delayed Acknowledgment (Retained for backward compatibility only)	2
MDM	Medical document management	9
MFD	Master files delayed application acknowledgment	8
MFK	Master files application acknowledgment	8
MFN	Master files notification	8
MFQ	Master files query	8
MFR	Master files response	8
NMD	Application management data message	14
NMQ	Application management query message	14
NMR	Application management response message	14
OMB	Blood product order message	4
OMD	Dietary order	4
OMG	General clinical order message	4
OMI	Imaging order	4
OML	Laboratory order message	4
OMN	Non-stock requisition order message	4
OMP	Pharmacy/treatment order message	4
OMS	Stock requisition order message	4
ORB	Blood product order acknowledgement message	4
ORD	Dietary order acknowledgment message	4
ORF	Query for results of observation	7
ORG	General clinical order acknowledgment message	4
ORI	Imaging order acknowledgement message	4
ORL	Laboratory acknowledgment message (unsolicited)	7
ORM	Pharmacy/treatment order message	4
ORN	Non-stock requisition - General order acknowledgment message	4
ORP	Pharmacy/treatment order acknowledgment message	4
ORR	General order response message response to any ORM	4
ORS	Stock requisition - Order acknowledgment message	4
ORU	Unsolicited transmission of an observation message	7
OSQ	Query response for order status	4
OSR	Query response for order status	4
OUL	Unsolicited laboratory observation message	7
PEX	Product experience message	7
PGL	Patient goal message	12
PIN	Patient insurance information	11

Message	Description	Chapter
PMU	Add personnel record	15
PPG	Patient pathway message (goal-oriented)	12
PPP	Patient pathway message (problem-oriented)	12
PPR	Patient problem message	12
PPT	Patient pathway goal-oriented response	12
PPV	Patient goal response	12
PRR	Patient problem response	12
PTR	Patient pathway problem-oriented response	12
QBP	Query by parameter	5
QCK	Deferred query	5
QCN	Cancel query	5
QRY	Query, original mode	3
QSB	Create subscription	5
QSX	Cancel subscription/acknowledge message	5
QVR	Query for previous events	5
RAR	Pharmacy/treatment administration information	4
RAS	Pharmacy/treatment administration message	4
RCI	Return clinical information	11
RCL	Return clinical list	11
RDE	Pharmacy/treatment encoded order message	4
RDR	Pharmacy/treatment dispense information	4
RDS	Pharmacy/treatment dispense message	4
RDY	Display based response	5
REF	Patient referral	11
RER	Pharmacy/treatment encoded order information	4
RGR	Pharmacy/treatment dose information	4
RGV	Pharmacy/treatment give message	4
ROR	Pharmacy/treatment order response	4
RPA	Return patient authorization	11
RPI	Return patient information	11
RPL	Return patient display list	11
RPR	Return patient display list	11
RQA	Request patient authorization	11
RQC	Request clinical information	11
RQI	Request patient information	11
RQP	Request patient demographics	11
RQQ	Event replay query	5
RRA	Pharmacy/treatment administration acknowledgment message	4
RRD	Pharmacy/treatment dispense acknowledgment message	4
RRE	Pharmacy/treatment disperse acknowledgment message	4
RRG	Pharmacy/treatment give acknowledgment message	4
RRI	Return referral information	11
RSP	Segment pattern response	5
RTB	Tabular response	5
SIU	Schedule information unsolicited	10
SPQ	Stored procedure request	5
SQM	Schedule query message	10
SQR	. , ,	10
	Schedule query response	
SRM	Schedule request message	10
SRR	Scheduled request response	10
SSR	Specimen status request message	13
SSU	Specimen status update message	13
SUR	Summary product experience report	7
TBR	Tabular data response	5

Message	Description	Chapter
TCU	Automated equipment test code settings update message	13
UDM	Unsolicited display update message	5
VQQ	Virtual table query	5
VXQ	Query for vaccination record	4
VXR	Vaccination record response	4
VXU	Unsolicited vaccination record update	4
VXX	Response for vaccination query with multiple PID matches	4

2.17.2 Event type table

HL7 Table 0003 - Event type

Value	Description	Comment
A01	ADT/ACK - Admit/visit notification	
A02	ADT/ACK - Transfer a patient	
A03	ADT/ACK - Discharge/end visit	
A04	ADT/ACK - Register a patient	
A05	ADT/ACK - Pre-admit a patient	
A06	ADT/ACK - Change an outpatient to an inpatient	
A07	ADT/ACK - Change an inpatient to an outpatient	
A08	ADT/ACK - Update patient information	
A09	ADT/ACK - Patient departing - tracking	
A10	ADT/ACK - Patient arriving - tracking	
A11	ADT/ACK - Cancel admit/visit notification	
A12	ADT/ACK - Cancel transfer	
A13	ADT/ACK - Cancel discharge/end visit	
A14	ADT/ACK - Pending admit	
A15	ADT/ACK - Pending transfer	
A16	ADT/ACK - Pending discharge	
A17	ADT/ACK - Swap patients	
A18	ADT/ACK - Merge patient information (for backward compatibility only)	
A19	QRY/ADR - Patient query	
A20	ADT/ACK - Bed status update	
A21	ADT/ACK - Patient goes on a "leave of absence"	
A22	ADT/ACK - Patient returns from a "leave of absence"	
A23	ADT/ACK - Delete a patient record	
A24	ADT/ACK - Link patient information	
A25	ADT/ACK - Cancel pending discharge	
A26	ADT/ACK - Cancel pending transfer	
A27	ADT/ACK - Cancel pending admit	
A28	ADT/ACK - Add person information	
A29	ADT/ACK - Delete person information	
A30	ADT/ACK - Merge person information (for backward compatibility only)	
A31	ADT/ACK - Update person information	
A32	ADT/ACK - Cancel patient arriving - tracking	
A33	ADT/ACK - Cancel patient departing - tracking	
A34	ADT/ACK - Merge patient information - patient ID only (for backward compatibility only)	
A35	ADT/ACK - Merge patient information - account number only (for backward compatibility only)	
A36	ADT/ACK - Merge patient information - patient ID and account number (for backward compatibility only)	
A37	ADT/ACK - Unlink patient information	
A38	ADT/ACK - Cancel pre-admit	
A39	ADT/ACK - Merge person – patient ID (for backward compatibility only)	
A40	ADT/ACK - Merge patient – patient identifier list	

	[
Value	Description	Comment
A41	ADT/ACK - Merge account - patient account number	
A42	ADT/ACK - Merge visit - visit number	
A43	ADT/ACK - Move patient information – patient identifier list	
A44	ADT/ACK - Move account information - patient account number	
A45	ADT/ACK - Move visit information - visit number	
A46	ADT/ACK - Change patient ID (for backward compatibility only)	
A47	ADT/ACK - Change patient identifier list	
A48	ADT/ACK - Change alternate patient ID (for backward compatibility only)	
A49	ADT/ACK - Change patient account number	
A50	ADT/ACK - Change visit number	
A51	ADT/ACK - Change alternate visit ID	
A52	ADT/ACK – Cancel leave of absence for a patient	
A53	ADT/ACK – Cancel patient returns from a leave of absence	
A54	ADT/ACK - Change attending doctor	
A55	ADT/ACK – Cancel change attending doctor	
A60	ADT/ACK – Update allergy information	
A61	ADT/ACK – Change consulting doctor	
A62	ADT/ACK – Cancel change consulting doctor	
B01	PMU/ACK – Add personnel record	
B02	PMU/ACK – Update personnel record	
B03	PMU/ACK – Delete personnel re cord	
B04	PMU/ACK – Active practicing person	
B05	PMU/ACK – Deactivate practicing person	
B06	PMU/ACK – Terminate practicing person	
B07	PMU/ACK – Grant Certificate/Permission	
B08	PMU/ACK – Revoke Certificate/Permission	
C01	CRM - Register a patient on a clinical trial	
C02	CRM - Cancel a patient registration on clinical trial (for clerical mistakes only)	
C03	CRM - Correct/update registration information	
C04	CRM - Patient has gone off a clinical trial	
C05	CRM - Patient enters phase of clinical trial	
C06	CRM - Cancel patient entering a phase (clerical mistake)	
C07	CRM - Correct/update phase information	
C08	CRM - Patient has gone off phase of clinical trial	
C09	CSU - Automated time intervals for reporting, like monthly	
C10	CSU - Patient completes the clinical trial	
C11	CSU - Patient completes a phase of the clinical trial	
C12	CSU - Update/correction of patient order/result information	
CNQ	Cancel Query	
I01	RQI/RPI - Request for insurance information	
102	RQI/RPL - Request/receipt of patient selection display list	
103	RQI/RPR - Request/receipt of patient selection list	
104	RQD/RPI - Request for patient demographic data	
105	RQC/RCI - Request for patient clinical information	
106	RQC/RCL - Request/receipt of clinical data listing	
107	PIN/ACK - Unsolicited insurance information	
108	RQA/RPA - Request for treatment authorization information	
109	RQA/RPA - Request for modification to an authorization	
I10	RQA/RPA - Request for resubmission of an authorization	
l11	RQA/RPA - Request for cancellation of an authorization	
l12	REF/RRI - Patient referral	
l13	REF/RRI - Modify patient referral	
l14	REF/RRI - Cancel patient referral	
l15	REF/RRI - Request patient referral status	
J01	QCN/ACK – Cancel query/acknowledge message	

Value	Description	Comment
J02	QSX/ACK – Cancel subscription/acknowledge message	
K11	RSP - Segment pattern response in response to QBP^Q11	
K13	RTB - Tabular response in response to QBP^Q13	
K15	RDY - Display response in response to QBP^Q15	
K21	RSP – Get person demographics response	
K22	RSP – Find candidates response	
K23	RSP – Get corresponding identifiers response	
K24	RSP – Allocate identifiers response	
K25	RSP - Personnel Information by Segment Response	
K31	RSP – Dispense History	
M01	MFN/MFK - Master file not otherwise specified (for backward compatibility only)	
M02	MFN/MFK - Master file – staff practitioner	
M03	MFN/MFK - Master file - test/observation (for backward compatibility only)	
M04	MFN/MFK - Master files charge description	
M05	MFN/MFK - Patient location master file	
M06	MFN/MFK - Clinical study with phases and schedules master file	
M07	MFN/MFK - Clinical study without phases but with schedules master file	
M08	MFN/MFK - Test/observation (numeric) master file	
M09	MFN/MFK - Test/observation (categorical) master file	
M10	MFN/MFK - Test /observation batteries master file	
M11	MFN/MFK - Test/calculated observations master file	
M12	MFN/MFK – Master file notification message	
M13	MFN/MFK - Master file notification - general	
M14	MFN/MFK - Master file notification – site defined	
M15	MFN/MFK – Inventory item master file notification	
N01	NMQ/NMR - Application management query message	
N02	NMD/ACK - Application management data message (unsolicited)	
001	ORM - Order message (also RDE, RDS, RGV, RAS)	
002	ORR - Order response (also RRE, RRD, RRG, RRA)	
003	OMD – Diet order	
004	ORD – Diet order acknowledgment	
O05	OMS – Stock requisition order	
006	ORS – Stock requisition acknowledgment	
007	OMN – Non-stock requisition order	
007	ORN – Non-stock requisition acknowledgment	
009	OMP – Pharmacy/treatment order	
O10	ORP – Pharmacy/treatment order acknowledgment	
010	RDE – Pharmacy/treatment encoded order	
012	RRE – Pharmacy/treatment encoded order acknowledgment	+
012	RDS – Pharmacy/treatment encoded order acknowledgment RDS – Pharmacy/treatment dispense	+
013	RRD – Pharmacy/treatment dispense acknowledgment	
O14 O15	RGV – Pharmacy/treatment give	
O16	RRG – Pharmacy/treatment give	
017	RAS – Pharmacy/treatment give acknowledgment	
O17	RRA – Pharmacy/treatment administration acknowledgment	
O18	OMG – General clinical order	
O20	ORG/ORL – General clinical order response	
O20 O21	OML - Laboratory order	
	ORL - General laboratory order response message to any OML	
O22 O23	OMI – Imaging order OMI – Imaging order	+
		+
O24	ORI – Imaging order response message to any OMI	+
O25	RDE - Pharmacy/Treatment refill authorization request	+
O26	RRE - Pharmacy/Treatment Refill Authorization Acknowledgement	+
O27	OMB – Blood product order	

Value	Description	Comment
O28	ORB – Blood product order acknowledgment	
029	BPS – Blood product dispense status	
O30	BRP – Blood product dispense status acknowledgment	
O31	BTS – Blood product transfusion/disposition	
032	BRT – Blood product transfusion/disposition acknowledgment	
033	OML – Laboratory order for multiple orders related to a single specimen	
033	ORL – Laboratory order response message to a multiple order related to single	
	specimen OML	
O35	OML – Laboratory order for multiple orders related to a single container of a specimen	
O36	ORL - Laboratory order response message to a single container of a specimen OML	
P01	BAR/ACK - Add patient accounts	
P02	BAR/ACK - Purge patient accounts	
P03	DFT/ACK - Post detail financial transaction	
P04	QRY/DSP – Generate bill and A/R statements	
P05	BAR/ACK – Update account	
P06	BAR/ACK - End account	
P07	PEX - Unsolicited initial individual product experience report	
P08	PEX - Unsolicited update individual product experience report	
P09	SUR - Summary product experience report	
P10	BAR/ACK –Transmit Ambulatory Payment Classification(APC)	
P11	DFT/ACK - Post Detail Financial Transactions - New	
P12	BAR/ACK - Update Diagnosis/Procedure	
PC1	PPR - PC/ problem add	
PC2	PPR - PC/ problem update	
PC3	PPR - PC/ problem delete	
PC4	QRY - PC/ problem query	
PC5	PRR - PC/ problem response	
PC6	PGL - PC/ goal add	
PC7	PGL - PC/ goal update	
PC8	PGL - PC/ goal delete	
PC9	QRY - PC/ goal query	
PCA	PPV - PC/ goal response	
PCB	PPP - PC/ pathway (problem-oriented) add	
PCC	PPP - PC/ pathway (problem-oriented) update	
PCD	PPP - PC/ pathway (problem-oriented) delete	
PCE	QRY - PC/ pathway (problem-oriented) guery	
PCF	PTR - PC/ pathway (problem-oriented) query response	
PCG	PPG - PC/ pathway (goal-oriented) add	
PCH	PPG - PC/ pathway (goal-oriented) add	
PCJ	PPG - PC/ pathway (goal-oriented) delete	
PCK	QRY - PC/ pathway (goal-oriented) query	
PCL	PPT - PC/ pathway (goal-oriented) query response	
Q01	QRY/DSR - Query sent for immediate response	
Q01 Q02	,	
Q02 Q03	QRY/QCK - Query sent for deferred response	+
Q03 Q04	DSR/ACK - Deferred response to a query	
Q04 Q05	EQQ – Embedded query language query UDM/ACK - Unsolicited display update message	+
	OSQ/OSR - Query for order status	
Q06		
Q07	VQQ – Virtual table query	
Q08	SPQ – Stored procedure request	
Q09	RQQ – event replay query	-
Q11	QBP - Query by parameter requesting an RSP segment pattern response	
Q13	QBP - Query by parameter requesting an RTB - tabular response	
Q15	QBP - Query by parameter requesting an RDY display response	

OTF ONE Create subscription	Value	Description	Comment
Q21 GBP – Get person demographics Q22 QBP – Find candidates Q24 QBP – Get corresponding identifiers Q25 QBP – Parlocate identifiers Q26 ROR - Pharmacy/treatment order response Q27 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment administration information Q28 RDR - Pharmacy/treatment administration information Q29 RER - Pharmacy/treatment dose information Q30 RGR - Pharmacy/treatment dose information Q31 QBP - Dispense History R01 ORU/ACK - Unsolicited transmission of an observation message R02 QRY - Query for results of observation R03 QRY - Query for results of observation R04 ORF - Response to query, transmission of requested observation R07 RDR - Paharmacy prescription order query response R08 TBR - Tabular Data Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R01 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R22 OUL - Unsolicited Point-Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Point-Oriented Observa	Q16	QSB – Create subscription	
Q22 QBP - Get corresponding identifiers Q24 QBP - Allocate identifiers Q25 QBP - Personnel Information by Segment Query Q26 RGN - Pharmacy/treatment order response Q27 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment order response Q28 RDR - Pharmacy/treatment order response Q29 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment order response Q29 RER - Pharmacy/treatment order	Q17	QVR – Query for previous events	
Q23 QBP – Allocate identifiers Q24 QBP – Personnel Information by Segment Query Q25 QBP – Personnel Information by Segment Query Q26 ROR - Pharmacy/treatment order response Q27 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment defininistration information Q28 RDR - Pharmacy/treatment describent information Q30 RGR - Pharmacy/treatment dose information Q31 QBP – Dispense History R01 ORIV/ACK - Unsolicited transmission of an observation message R02 QRY - Ouery for results of observation R03 QRY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 QRF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R07 RDR - Pharmacy prescription order query response R08 RDR - Fehranced Display Response R09 RER - Explay Response R09 REP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message - Search For An Order R30 <	Q21	QBP – Get person demographics	
Q23 QBP – Allocate identifiers Q24 QBP – Personnel Information by Segment Query Q25 QBP – Personnel Information by Segment Query Q26 ROR - Pharmacy/treatment order response Q27 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment defininistration information Q28 RDR - Pharmacy/treatment describent information Q30 RGR - Pharmacy/treatment dose information Q31 QBP – Dispense History R01 ORIV/ACK - Unsolicited transmission of an observation message R02 QRY - Ouery for results of observation R03 QRY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 QRF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R07 RDR - Pharmacy prescription order query response R08 RDR - Fehranced Display Response R09 RER - Explay Response R09 REP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message - Search For An Order R30 <	Q22	1 01	
Q24 QBP - Allocate identifiers Q25 QBP - Personnel Information by Segment Query Q26 RGR - Pharmacy/treatment order response Q27 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment dispense information Q28 RGR - Pharmacy/treatment dispense information Q29 RER - Pharmacy/treatment dose information Q31 QBP - Dispense History R01 ORU/ACK - Unsolicited transmission of an observation message R02 QRY - Query for results of observation R03 QRY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 QRF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R07 RDF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R08 RDR - Enhanced Display Response R09 EDR - Enhanced Display Response R09 EDR - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order - Place An Order <td>Q23</td> <td></td> <td></td>	Q23		
Q25 Q8P - Personnel Information by Segment Query Q26 ROR - Pharmacy/treatment administration information Q27 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment dispense information Q28 RDR - Pharmacy/treatment dispense information Q29 RER - Pharmacy/treatment dose information Q31 Q8P - Dispense History R01 ORJUACK - Unsolicited transmission of an observation message R02 QRY - Query for results of observation R03 QRY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 QRF - Response to query. transmission of requested observation R07 RDR - Enhanced Display Response R07 EDR - Enhanced Display Response R08 TBR - Tabular Data Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R22 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL – Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R30 ORU – Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R31 ORU – Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Spatch For An Order <td< td=""><td>-</td><td>, ,</td><td></td></td<>	-	, ,	
Q26 ROR. Pharmacy/treatment administration information Q27 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment administration information Q28 RER - Pharmacy/treatment dispense information Q29 RER - Pharmacy/treatment encoded order information Q30 RGR - Pharmacy/treatment dose information Q31 QBP - Dispense History R01 ORL/ACK - Unsolicited transmission of an observation message R02 QRY - Query for results of observation R03 QRY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 ORF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R07 EDR - Enhanced Display Response R08 RDR - Pharmacy prescription order query response R09 EDR - Enhanced Display Response R09 EDR - Event Replay Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R31 ORU - Unsolicited Prorder of Descryation Message Without Existing Order - Place An Order			
Q27 RAR - Pharmacy/treatment dispense information Q28 RDR - Pharmacy/treatment dispense information Q29 RER - Pharmacy/treatment coded order information Q30 RGR - Pharmacy/treatment coded order information Q31 QBP – Dispense History R01 QRIV-Care Dispense History R02 QRY - Query for results of observation R03 QRY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 QRF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R07 RGR - Pharmacy prescription order query response R08 RGR - Pharmacy prescription order query response R09 EBR - Event Replay Response R09 EBR - Event Replay Response R09 EBR - Event Replay Response R21 OUL – Unsolicited laboratory observation R22 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL – Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R25 ORU – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R26 ORU – Unsolicited Poerion Container Oriented Observation Message R27 ORU – Unsolicited Poerion Container Oriented Observation Message R28 ORU – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R39 ORU – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R30 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Order Observation Message — Search For An Order R31 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment booking S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment cancellation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S31 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S32 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S33 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S41 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment trescheduling S41 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment trescheduling S42 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S43 SIU/ACK - Notificat		, , ,	
Q28	-	·	
Q29 RER - Pharmacy/treatment encoded order information	-	,	
Q31 QBP — Dispense History R01 ORU/ACK - Unsolicited transmission of an observation message R02 QRY - Query for results of observation R03 QRYDSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 QRF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R0R R0R - Pharmacy prescription order query response R0R EDR - Enhanced Display Response R08 TBR - Tabular Data Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 QUL - Unsolicited Indepratory observation R22 QUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 QUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 QUL - Unsolicited Oriented Observation Message R25 QUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R26 QUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R27 QUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R28 QUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R29 QUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R30 QRU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R31 QRU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R32 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message R33 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message R34 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R35 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R36 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R37 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R39 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R39 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R39 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R39 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R39 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Message Search For An Order R39 QRU - Unsolicited Prever Point-Of-Care Observation Mes	-	, ,	
Q31	-	,	
R01 ORU/ACK - Unsolicited transmission of an observation message R02 ORY - Query for results of observation R03 ORY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 ORF - Response to query: transmission of requested observation R0R R0R - Pharmacy prescription order query response R07 EDR - Enhanced Display Response R08 TBR - Tabular Data Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited laboratory observation R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R25 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R26 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R27 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R30 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message — Search For An Order R31 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S01 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S02 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S08 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S09 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment acncellation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of a	-	·	
R02 QRY - Query for results of observation R03 QRY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 ORF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R0R R0R - Pharmacy prescription order query response R07 EDR - Enhanced Display Response R08 TBR - Tabular Data Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited laboratory observation R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R25 OUL - Unsolicited Porti-Of-Care Observation Message R26 OUL - Unsolicited Porti-Of-Care Observation Message R27 OUL - Unsolicited Porti-Of-Care Observation Message R28 OUL - Unsolicited Porti-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order - Place An Order R31 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message - Search For An Order R32 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation R33 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation R34 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment modification S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment modification S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Re	-	, ,	
R03 GRY/DSR Display-oriented results, query/unsol. update (for backward compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04 ORF - Response to query; transmission of requested observation R07 R08 R08 - Pharmacy prescription order query response R07 EDR - Enhanced Display Response R08 TBR - Trabular Data Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited laboratory observation R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R25 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R26 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R27 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order - Place An Order R31 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message – Search For An Order R32 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S01 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S02 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment cancellation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion	-	Ÿ	
Compatibility only) (Replaced by Q05) R04		,	
ROR ROR - Response to query; transmission of requested observation ROR ROR - Pharmacy prescription order query response RO7 EDR - Enhanced Display Response RO8 TBR - Tabular Data Response RO9 ERP - Event Replay Response RO9 ERP - Event Replay Response RO1 OUL - Unsolicited aboratory observation RO2 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message RO9 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message RO9 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message RO9 ORU - Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message RO9 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message RO9 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order - Place An Order RO1 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation RO2 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation SO1 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking SO2 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling SO3 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling SO3 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling SO3 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation SO4 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation SO5 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation SO6 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation SO7 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment SO8 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment SO9 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment SO9 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment SO9 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment SO9 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment SO9 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment SO9 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment SO9 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment SO9 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment SO9 SUI/ACK - Notification of appointment trescheduling SO9 SUI/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation SO9 SUI/ACK	1.55		
ROR ROR - Pharmacy prescription order query response RO7 EDR - Enhanced Display Response RO8 TBR - Tabular Data Response RO9 ERP - Event Replay Response RO9 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R25 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R26 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order - Place An Order R31 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message - Search For An Order R32 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S01 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S02 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S07 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S08 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S09 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment trescheduling S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment trescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment trescheduling S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment trescheduling S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment trescheduling S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointm	R04		
R07 EDR - Enhanced Display Response R08 TBR - Tabular Data Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited laboratory observation R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R25 OUL - Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R26 OUL - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R27 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message R28 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message — Search For An Order R31 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation R32 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S30 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S31 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S32 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S33 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S34 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S35 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S36 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S37 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S38 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S39 SRM/SRR - Request dacellation of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment modification S31 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S33 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S35 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S36 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S37 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S38 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S39 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appo	-		
R08 TBR - Tabular Data Response R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited laboratory observation R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R30 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message R31 ORU - Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order - Place An Order R31 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message - Search For An Order R32 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S30 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S30 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment tooking S31 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S31 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S32 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment modification S33 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S34 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S35 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S36 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S37 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S38 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion	-		
R09 ERP - Event Replay Response R21 OUL - Unsolicited laboratory observation R22 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL - Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R30 ORU - Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message Without Existing Order - Place An Order R31 ORU - Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message - Search For An Order R32 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation R33 ORU - Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation R34 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S07 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S08 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S09 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S08 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion			
R22 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL – Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R30 ORU – Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order – Place An Order R31 ORU – Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message — Search For An Order R32 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S30 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S32 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S33 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S34 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S35 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S37 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service	R09	ERP - Event Replay Response	
R22 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Oriented Observation Message R23 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL – Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R30 ORU – Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order – Place An Order R31 ORU – Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message — Search For An Order R32 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S30 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S30 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S30 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S31 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S32 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S33 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S34 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S35 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of appointment deletion S37 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service	R21	, , ,	
R23 OUL – Unsolicited Specimen Container Oriented Observation Message R24 OUL – Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R30 ORU – Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order Place An Order R31 ORU – Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message – Search For An Order R32 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S04 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S07 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S08 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S09 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S09 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion	R22	,	
R24 OUL – Unsolicited Order Oriented Observation Message R30 ORU – Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order – Place An Order R31 ORU – Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message – Search For An Order R32 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S01 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S02 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S08 SRM/SRR - Request appointment of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request andification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion	R23		
R30 ORU – Unsolicited Point-Of-Care Observation Message Without Existing Order – Place An Order R31 ORU – Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message – Search For An Order R32 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S01 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S02 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment cancellation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S08 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion	-		
R31 ORU – Unsolicited New Point-Of-Care Observation Message – Search For An Order R32 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S01 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S02 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment ancellation S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	R30	•	
Order R32 ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation S01 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S02 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment			
S01 SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking S02 SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment cancellation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	R31		
SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment cancellation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	R32	ORU – Unsolicited Pre-Ordered Point-Of-Care Observation	
S03 SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment cancellation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S01	SRM/SRR - Request new appointment booking	
S04 SRM/SRR - Request appointment cancellation S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S02	SRM/SRR - Request appointment rescheduling	
S05 SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S03	SRM/SRR - Request appointment modification	
S06 SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S04	SRM/SRR - Request appointment cancellation	
S07 SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S05	SRM/SRR - Request appointment discontinuation	
S08 SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S06	SRM/SRR - Request appointment deletion	
S09 SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S07	SRM/SRR - Request addition of service/resource on appointment	
S10 SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S08	SRM/SRR - Request modification of service/resource on appointment	
S11 SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S09	SRM/SRR - Request cancellation of service/resource on appointment	
S12 SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S10	SRM/SRR - Request discontinuation of service/resource on appointment	
S13 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S11	SRM/SRR - Request deletion of service/resource on appointment	
S14 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S12	SIU/ACK - Notification of new appointment booking	
S15 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S13	SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment rescheduling	
S16 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S14	SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment modification	
S17 SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S15	SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment cancellation	
S18 SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S16	SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment discontinuation	
S19 SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S17	SIU/ACK - Notification of appointment deletion	
S20 SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	S18	SIU/ACK - Notification of addition of service/resource on appointment	
	S19	SIU/ACK - Notification of modification of service/resource on appointment	
COA CILIACIA Natification of discontinuation of according	S20	SIU/ACK - Notification of cancellation of service/resource on appointment	
521 SIU/ACK - Notification of discontinuation of service/resource on appointment	S21	SIU/ACK - Notification of discontinuation of service/resource on appointment	
S22 SIU/ACK - Notification of deletion of service/resource on appointment	S22		
S23 SIU/ACK - Notification of blocked schedule time slot(s)	S23		
S24 SIU/ACK - Notification of opened ("unblocked") schedule time slot(s)	S24		
S25 SQM/SQR - Schedule query message and response	S25	SQM/SQR - Schedule query message and response	

Value	Description	Comment
S26	SIU/ACK Notification that patient did not show up for schedule appointment	
T01	MDM/ACK - Original document notification	
T02	MDM/ACK - Original document notification and content	
T03	MDM/ACK - Document status change notification	
T04	MDM/ACK - Document status change notification and content	
T05	MDM/ACK - Document addendum notification	
T06	MDM/ACK - Document addendum notification and content	
T07	MDM/ACK - Document edit notification	
T08	MDM/ACK - Document edit notification and content	
T09	MDM/ACK - Document replacement notification	
T10	MDM/ACK - Document replacement notification and content	
T11	MDM/ACK - Document cancel notification	
T12	QRY/DOC - Document query	
U01	ESU/ACK – Automated equipment status update	
U02	ESR/ACK – Automated equipment status request	
U03	SSU/ACK - Specimen status update	
U04	SSR/ACK - specimen status request	
U05	INU/ACK - Automated equipment inventory update	
U06	INR/ACK – Automated equipment inventory request	
U07	EAC/ACK – Automated equipment command	
U08	EAR/ACK – Automated equipment response	
U09	EAN/ACK – Automated equipment notification	
U10	TCU/ACK – Automated equipment test code settings update	
U11	TCR/ACK – Automated equipment test code settings request	
U12	LSU/ACK – Automated equipment log/service update	
U13	LSR/ACK – Automated equipment log/service request	
V01	VXQ - Query for vaccination record	
V02	VXX - Response to vaccination query returning multiple PID matches	
V03	VXR - Vaccination record response	
V04	VXU - Unsolicited vaccination record update	
Varies	MFQ/MFR - Master files query (use event same as asking for e.g., M05 - location)	
W01	ORU - Waveform result, unsolicited transmission of requested information	
W02	QRF - Waveform result, response to query	

2.17.3 Message structure table

The first column of this table contains the message structure code, which describes a particular HL7 "abstract message structure definition" in terms of segments, as defined in section.2.13, "Chapter Formats For Defining HL7 Messages". The second column lists the various HL7 trigger events that use the particular abstract message definition. For example, the message structure code ADT_A01 describes the single abstract message structure used by the trigger events A01, A04, A08 and A13.

HL7 Table 0354 - Message structure

Value	Events	Comment
ACK	Varies	
ADR_A19	A19	
ADT_A01	A01, A04, A08, A13	
ADT_A02	A02	
ADT_A03	A03	
ADT_A05	A05, A14, A28, A31	
ADT_A06	A06, A07	
ADT_A09	A09, A10, A11	
ADT_A12	A12	

Value	Events	Comment
ADT_A15	A15	
ADT_A16	A16	
ADT_A17	A17	
ADT_A18	A18	
 ADT_A20	A20	
 ADT_A21	A21, A22, A23, A25, A26, A27, A29, A32, A33	
ADT_A24	A24	
ADT_A30	A30, A34, A35, A36, A46, A47, A48, A49	
ADT_A37	A37	
ADT_A38	A38	
ADT_A39	A39, A40, A41, A42	
ADT A43	A43, A44	
ADT_A45	A45	
ADT_A50	A50, A51	
ADT_A52	A52, A53, A55	
ADT_A54	A54	
ADT_A60	A60	
ADT_A61	A61, A62	
BAR_P01	P01	
BAR_P02	P02	
BAR_P02	P05	
BAR_P06	P06	
BAR_P10	P10	
BAR_P12	P12	
BPS_029	029	
BRP_O30	030	
BRT_032	032	
BTS_031	031	
CRM_C01	C01, C02, C03, C04, C05, C06, C07, C08	
CSU_C09	C09, C10, C11, C12	
DFT_P03	P03	
DFT_F03	P11	
DOC_T12	T12	
DSR_P04	P04	
DSR_Q01	Q01	
DSR_Q01		
EAC_U07	Q03 U07	
	U09	
EAN_U09	U08	
EAR_U08 EDR_R07		
EQQ_Q04	R07 Q04	
EQQ_Q04 ERP_R09	R09	
ESR_U02	U02	
ESU_U01	U01	
INR_U06 INU U05	U06 U05	
LSU_U12	U12, U13	
MDM_T01		
MDM_T01	T01, T03, T05, T07, T09, T11 T02, T04, T06, T08, T10	
	MFA	
MFD_MFA		
MFK_M01	M01, M02, M03, M04, M05, M06, M07, M08, M09, M10, M11	
MFN_M01	M01	
MFN_M02	M02	
MFN_M03	M03	
MFN_M04	M04	

Value	Events	Comment
MFN_M05	M05	
MFN_M06	M06	
MFN_M07	M07	
MFN_M08	M08	
MFN_M09	M09	
MFN_M10	M10	
MFN_M11	M11	
MFN_M12	M12	
MFN_M13	M13	
MFN_M15	M15	
MFQ_M01	M01, M02, M03, M04, M05, M06	
MFR_M01	M01, M02, M03	
	M04 M04	
MFR_M04	Mo5	
MFR_M05		
MFR_M06	M06	
MFR_M07	M07	
NMD_N02	NO2	
NMQ_N01	NO1	
NMR_N01	N01	
OMB_027	027	
OMD_003	003	
OMG_O19	019	
OMI_O23	023	
OML_O21	021	
OML_O33	033	
OML_O35	035	
OMN_007	007	
OMP_009	009	
OMS_005	005	
ORB_028	028	
ORD_004	004	
ORF_R04	R04	
ORG_020	020	
ORI_024	O24	
ORL_O22	022	
ORL_034	034	
ORL_036	O36	
ORM_001	001	
ORN_008	O08	
ORP_O10	O10	
ORR_002	O02	
ORS_006	O06	
ORU_R01	R01	
ORU_R30	R30, R31, R32	
OSQ_Q06	Q06	
OSR_Q06	Q06	
OUL_R21	R21	
OUL_R22	R22	
OUL_R23	R23	
OUL_R24	R24	
PEX_P07	P07, P08	
PGL_PC6	PC6, PC7, PC8	
PMU_B01	B01, B02	
PMU_B03	B03	
PMU_B04	B04, B05, B06	
		1

Value	Events	Comment
PMU_B07	B07	
PMU_B08	B08	
PPG_PCG	PCC, PCG, PCH, PCJ	
PPP_PCB	PCB, PCD	
PPR_PC1	PC1, PC2, PC3	
PPT_PCL	PCL	
PPV_PCA	PCA	
PRR_PC5	PC5	
PTR_PCF	PCF	
QBP_Q11	Q11	
QBP_Q13	Q13	
QBP_Q15	Q15	
QBP_Q21	Q21, Q22, Q23,Q24, Q25	
QCK_Q02	Q02	
QCN_J01	J01, J02	
QRY_A19	A19	
QRY_P04	P04	
QRY_PC4	PC4, PC9, PCE, PCK	
QRY_Q01	Q01, Q26, Q27, Q28, Q29, Q30	
QRY_Q02	Q02	
QRY_R02	R02	
QRY_T12	T12	
QSB_Q16	Q16	
	Q17	
QVR_Q17	RAR	
RAR_RAR RAS_O17	O17	
RCI_I05	105	
RCL_I06	106	
RDE_O11	O11, O25	
RDR_RDR	RDR	
RDS_O13	013	
RDY_K15	K15	
REF_I12	112, 113, 114, 115	
RER_RER	RER	
RGR_RGR	RGR	
RGV_O15	O15	
ROR_ROR	ROR	
RPA_I08	108, 109. 110, 111	
RPI_I01	101	
RPI_I04	104	
RPL_I02	102	
RPR_I03	103	
RQA_I08	108, 109, 110, 111	
RQC_I05	105, 106	
RQI_I01	101, 102, 103, 107	
RQP_I04	104	
RQQ_Q09	Q09	
RRA_O18	018	
RRD_014	014	
RRE_O12	012, 026	
RRG_016	016	
RRI_I12	112, 113, 114, 115	
RSP_K11	K11	
RSP_K21	K21	
RSP_K22	K22	
1/01 _1/22	INEL	

Value	Events	Comment
RSP_K23	K23, K24	
RSP_K25	K25	
RSP_K31	K31	
RSP_Q11	Q11	
RTB_K13	K13	
SIU_S12	S12, S13, S14, S15, S16, S17, S18, S19, S20, S21, S22, S23, S24, S26	
SPQ_Q08	Q08	
SQM_S25	S25	
SQR_S25	S25	
SRM_S01	S01, S02, S03, S04, S05, S06, S07, S08, S09, S10, S11	
SRR_S01	S01, S02, S03, S04, S05, S06, S07, S08, S09, S10, S11	
SSR_U04	U04	
SSU_U03	U03	
SUR_P09	P09	
TBR_R08	R08	
TBR_R09	R09	
TCU_U10	U10, U11	
UDM_Q05	Q05	
VQQ_Q07	Q07	
VXQ_V01	V01	
VXR_V03	V03	
VXU_V04	V04	
VXX_V02	V02	
ORU_W01	W01	
QRF_W02	W02	

2.17.4 Coding system table

HL7 Table 0396 - Coding system

Value	Description	Comment / Source	Category
99zzz or L	Local general code (where z is an alphanumeric character)	Locally defined codes for purpose of sender or receiver. Local codes can be identified by L (for backward compatibility) or 99zzz (where z is an alphanumeric character).	General code
ACR	American College of Radiology finding codes	Index for Radiological Diagnosis Revised, 3 rd Edition 1986, American College of Radiology, Reston, VA.	Specific Non- Drug Code
ART	WHO Adverse Reaction Terms	WHO Collaborating Centre for International Drug Monitoring, Box 26, S-751 03, Uppsala, Sweden.	Drug code
ANS+	HL7 set of units of measure	HL7 set of units of measure based upon ANSI X3.50 - 1986, ISO 2988-83, and US customary units / see chapter 7, section 7.4.2.6.	
AS4	ASTM E1238/ E1467 Universal	American Society for Testing & Materials and CPT4 (see Appendix X1 of Specification E1238 and Appendix X2 of Specification E1467).	Specific Non- Drug Code
AS4E	AS4 Neurophysiology Codes	ASTM's diagnostic codes and test result coding/grading systems for clinical neurophysiology. See ASTM Specification E1467, Appendix 2.	Specific Non- Drug Code
ATC	American Type Culture Collection	Reference cultures (microorganisms, tissue cultures, etc.), related biological materials and associated data. American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Dr, Rockville MD, 20852. (301) 881-2600. http://www.atcc.org	Specific Non- Drug Code
C4	CPT-4	American Medical Association, P.O. Box 10946, Chicago IL 60610.	Specific Non- Drug Code

Value	Description	Comment / Source	Category
C5	CPT-5	(under development – same contact as above)	Specific Non- Drug Code
CAS	Chemical abstract codes	These include unique codes for each unique chemical, including all generic drugs. The codes do not distinguish among different dosing forms. When multiple equivalent CAS numbers exist, use the first one listed in USAN. USAN 1990 and the USP dictionary of drug names, William M. Heller, Ph.D., Executive Editor, United States Pharmacopeial Convention, Inc., 12601 Twinbrook Parkway, Rockville, MD 20852.	Drug code
CD2	CDT-2 Codes	American Dental Association's Current Dental Terminology (CDT-2) code. American Dental Association, 211 E. Chicago Avenue,. Chicago, Illinois 60611.	Specific Non- Drug Code
CDCA	CDC Analyte Codes	As above, for CDCM	
CDCM	CDC Methods/Instruments Codes	Public Health Practice Program Office, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 4770 Buford Highway, Atlanta, GA, 30421. Also available via FTP: tp://ftp.cdc.gov/pub/laboratory_info/CLIA/.	Drug code
CDS	CDC Surveillance	CDC Surveillance Codes. For data unique to specific public health surveillance requirements. Epidemiology Program Office, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1600 Clifton Rd, Atlanta, GA, 30333. (404) 639-3661.	Specific Non- Drug Code
CE	CEN ECG diagnostic codes	CEN PT007. A quite comprehensive set of ECG diagnostic codes (abbreviations) and descriptions published as a pre-standard by CEN TC251. Available from CEN TC251 secretariat, c/o Georges DeMoor, State University Hospital Gent, De Pintelaan 185-5K3, 9000 Gent, Belgium or Jos Willems, University of Gathuisberg, 49 Herestraat, 3000 Leuven, Belgium.	Specific Non- Drug Code
CLP	CLIP	Simon Leeming, Beth Israel Hospital, Boston MA. Codes for radiology reports.	Specific Non- Drug Code
CPTM	CPT Modifier Code	Available for the AMA at the address listed for CPT above. These codes are found in Appendix A of CPT 2000 Standard Edition. (CPT 2000 Standard Edition, American Medical Association, Chicago, IL).	Specific Non- Drug Code
CST	COSTART	International coding system for adverse drug reactions. In the USA, maintained by the FDA, Rockville, MD.	Drug code
CVX	CDC Vaccine Codes	National Immunization Program, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1660 Clifton Road, Atlanta, GA, 30333	Drug code
DCM	DICOM Controlled Terminology	Codes defined in DICOM Content Mapping Resource. Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM). NEMA Publication PS-3.16 National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA). Rosslyn, VA, 22209. Available at: http://medical.nema.org	Specific Non- Drug Code
Е	EUCLIDES	Available from Euclides Foundation International nv, Excelsiorlaan 4A, B-1930 Zaventem, Belgium; Phone: 32 2 720 90 60.	Specific Non- Drug Code
E5	Euclides quantity codes	Available from Euclides Foundation International nv (see above)	Specific Non- Drug Code
E6	Euclides Lab method codes	Available from Euclides Foundation International nv, Excelsiorlaan 4A, B-1930 Zaventem, Belgium; Phone: 32 2 720 90 60.	Specific Non- Drug Code
E7	Euclides Lab	Available from Euclides Foundation International nv (see	Specific Non-

Value	Description	Comment / Source	Category
	equipment codes	above)	Drug Code
ENZC	Enzyme Codes	Enzyme Committee of the International Union of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology. Enzyme Nomenclature: Recommendations on the Nomenclature and Classification of Enzyme-Catalysed Reactions. London: Academic Press, 1992.	Specific Non- Drug Code
FDDC	First DataBank Drug Codes	National Drug Data File. Proprietary product of First DataBank, Inc. (800) 633-3453, or http://www.firstdatabank.com .	Drug code
FDDX	First DataBank Diagnostic Codes	Used for drug-diagnosis interaction checking. Proprietary product of First DataBank, Inc. As above for FDDC.	Drug code
FDK	FDA K10	Dept. of Health & Human Services, Food & Drug Administration, Rockville, MD 20857. (device & analyte process codes).	Specific Non- Drug Code
НВ	HIBCC	Health Industry Business Communications Council, 5110 N. 40 th St., Ste 120, Phoenix, AZ 85018.	Specific Non- Drug Code
HCPCS	CMS (formerly HCFA) Common Procedure Coding System	HCPCS: contains codes for medical equipment, injectable drugs, transportation services, and other services not found in CPT4. 7	Specific Non- Drug Code
HCPT	Health Care Provider Taxonomy	The Blue Cross and Blue Shield Association will act as the administrator of the Provider Taxonomy so that the code structure is classified as external to X12. Ongoing maintenance is solely the responsibility of Workgroup 15 (Provider Information) within ANSI ASC X12N, or the work group's successor. Blue Cross and Blue Shield Association, 225 North Michigan Avenue, Chicago, IL 60601, Attention: ITS Department, ECNS Unit. http://www.wpc-edi.com/taxonomy/ Primary distribution is the responsibility of Washington Publishing Company, through its World Wide Web Site, at the same web site.	Specific Non- Drug Code
HHC	Home Health Care	Home Health Care Classification System; Virginia Saba, EdD, RN; Georgetown University School of Nursing; Washington, DC.	Specific Non- Drug Code
HI	Health Outcomes	Health Outcomes Institute codes for outcome variables available (with responses) from Stratis Health (formerly Foundation for Health Care Evaluation and Health Outcomes Institute), 2901 Metro Drive, Suite 400, Bloomington, MN, 55425-1525; (612) 854-3306 (voice); (612) 853-8503 (fax); info@stratishealth.org. See examples in the Implementation Guide.	Specific Non- Drug Code
HL7nnnn	HL7 Defined Codes where nnnn is the HL7 table number	Health Level Seven where nnnn is the HL7 table number	General code
HOT	Japanese Nationwide Medicine Code		

⁷ The HCPCS code is divided into three "levels." Level I includes the entire CPT-4 code by reference. Level II includes the American Dental Association's Current Dental Terminology (CDT-2) code by reference. Level II also includes the genuine HCPCS codes, approved and maintained jointly by the Alpha-Numeric Editorial Panel, consisting of CMS, the Health Insurance Association of America, and the Blue Cross and Blue Shield Association. Level III are codes developed locally by Medicare carriers. The HCPCS modifiers are divided into the same three levels, I being CPT-4 modifiers, II CDT-2 and genuine HCPCS modifiers, and III being locally agreed modifiers.

CMS distributes the HCPCS codes via the National Technical Information Service (NTIS, www.ntis.gov) and NTIS distribution includes the CDT-2 part of HCPCS Level II, but does not include the CPT-4 part (Level I). CMS may distribute the CPT-4 part to its contractors.

Value	Description	Comment / Source	Category
HPC	CMS (formerly HCFA)Procedure Codes (HCPCS)	Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA) Common Procedure Coding System (HCPCS) including modifiers. 8 http://www.cms.hhs.gov/MedHCPCSGenInfo/	Specific Non- Drug Code
I10	ICD-10	World Health Publications, Albany, NY.	Specific Non- Drug Code
I10P	ICD-10 Procedure Codes	Procedure Coding System (ICD-10-PCS.) See http://www.cms.hhs.gov/ICD9ProviderDiagnosticCodes/08_ICD10.aspfor more information.	Specific Non- Drug Code
19	ICD9	World Health Publications, Albany, NY.	Specific Non- Drug Code
I9C	ICD-9CM	Commission on Professional and Hospital Activities, 1968 Green Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48105 (includes all procedures and diagnostic tests).	Specific Non- Drug Code
IBT	ISBT	Retained for backward compatibility only as of v 2.5. This code value has been superceded by IBTnnnn. International Society of Blood Transfusion. Blood Group Terminology 1990. VOX Sanquines 1990 58(2):152-169.	Specific Non- Drug Code
IBTnnnn	ISBT 128 codes where nnnn specifies a specific table within ISBT 128.	International Society of Blood Transfusion. (specific contact information will be supplied to editor.) The variable suffix (nnnn) identifies a specific table within ISBT 128.	Specific Non- Drug Code
IC2	ICHPPC-2	International Classification of Health Problems in Primary Care, Classification Committee of World Organization of National Colleges, Academies and Academic Associations of General Practitioners (WONCA), 3 rd edition. An adaptation of ICD9 intended for use in General Medicine, Oxford University Press.	Specific Non- Drug Code
ICD10A M	ICD-10 Australian modification		
ICD10CA	ICD-10 Canada		
ICDO	International Classification of Diseases for Oncology	International Classification of Diseases for Oncology, 2nd Edition. World Health Organization: Geneva, Switzerland, 1990. Order from: College of American Pathologists, 325 Waukegan Road, Northfield, IL, 60093- 2750. (847) 446-8800.	Specific Non- Drug Code
ICS	ICCS	Commission on Professional and Hospital Activities, 1968 Green Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48105.	Specific Non- Drug Code
ICSD	International Classification of Sleep Disorders	International Classification of Sleep Disorders Diagnostic and Coding Manual, 1990, available from American Sleep Disorders Association, 604 Second Street SW, Rochester, MN 55902	Specific Non- Drug Code
ISOnnnn	ISO Defined Codes where nnnn is the ISO table number	International Standards Organization where nnnn is the ISO table number	General code
ISO+	ISO 2955.83 (units of	See chapter 7, section 7.4.2.6	

⁸ The HCPCS code is divided into three "levels." Level I includes the entire CPT-4 code by reference. Level II includes the American Dental Association's Current Dental Terminology (CDT-2) code by reference. Level II also includes the genuine HCPCS codes, approved and maintained jointly by the Alpha-Numeric Editorial Panel, consisting of CMS, the Health Insurance Association of America, and the Blue Cross and Blue Shield Association. Level III are codes developed locally by Medicare carriers. The HCPCS modifiers are divided into the same three levels, I being CPT-4 modifiers, II CDT-2 and genuine HCPCS modifiers, and III being locally agreed modifiers.

CMS distributes the HCPCS codes via the National Technical Information Service (NTIS, www.ntis.gov) and NTIS distribution includes the CDT-2 part of HCPCS Level II, but does not include the CPT-4 part (Level I). CMS may distribute the CPT-4 part to its contractors.

Value	Description	Comment / Source	Category
	measure) with HL7 extensions		
IUPP	IUPAC/IFCC Property Codes	International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry/International Federation of Clinical Chemistry. The Silver Book: Compendium of terminology and nomenclature of properties in clinical laboratory sciences. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific Publishers, 1995. Henrik Olesen, M.D., D.M.Sc., Chairperson, Department of Clinical Chemistry, KK76.4.2, Rigshospitalet, University Hospital of Copenhagen, DK-2200, Copenhagen.	
IUPC	IUPAC/IFCC Component Codes	Codes used by IUPAC/IFF to identify the component (analyte) measured. Contact Henrik Olesen, as above for IUPP.	Specific Non- Drug Code
JC8	Japanese Chemistry	Clinical examination classification code. Japan Association of Clinical Pathology. Version 8, 1990. A multiaxial code including a subject code (e.g., Rubella = 5f395, identification code (e.g., virus ab IGG), a specimen code (e.g., serum =023) and a method code (e.g., ELISA = 022)	withdrawn
JC10	JLAC/JSLM, nationwide laboratory code	Source: Classification & Coding for Clinical Laboratory. Japanese Society of Laboratory Medicine(JSLM, Old:Japan Society of Clinical Pathology). Version 10, 1997. A multiaxial code including a analyte code (e.g., Rubella = 5f395), identification code (e.g., virus ab IGG=1431), a specimen code (e.g., serum =023) and a method code (e.g., ELISA = 022)	
JJ1017	Japanese Image Examination Cache		
LB	Local billing code	Local billing codes/names (with extensions if needed).	General code
LN	Logical Observation Identifier Names and Codes (LOINC®)	Regenstrief Institute, c/o LOINC, 1050 Wishard Blvd., 5 th floor, Indianapolis, IN 46202. 317/630-7433. Available from the Regenstrief Institute server at http://www.Regenstrief.org/loinc/loinc.htm .	Specific Non- Drug Code
MCD	Medicaid	Medicaid billing codes/names.	Specific Non- Drug Code
MCR	Medicare	Medicare billing codes/names.	Specific Non- Drug Code
MDDX	Medispan Diagnostic Codes	Codes Used for drug-diagnosis interaction checking. Proprietary product. Hierarchical drug codes for identifying drugs down to manufacturer and pill size. MediSpan, Inc., 8425 Woodfield Crossing Boulevard, Indianapolis, IN 46240. Tel: (800) 428-4495. http://www.medispan.com/Products/index.aspx?cat=1 as above for MGPI.	Drug code
MEDC	Medical Economics Drug Codes	Proprietary Codes for identifying drugs. Proprietary product of Medical Economics Data, Inc. (800) 223-0581.	Drug code
MEDR	Medical Dictionary for Drug Regulatory Affairs (MEDDRA)	Dr. Louise Wood, Medicines Control Agency, Market Towers, 1 Nine Elms Lane, London SW85NQ, UK Tel: (44)0 171-273-0000 http://www.meddramsso.com/MSSOWeb/index.htm	Drug code
MEDX	Medical Economics Diagnostic Codes	Used for drug-diagnosis interaction checking. Proprietary product of Medical Economics Data, Inc. (800) 223-0581.	Drug code
MGPI	Medispan GPI	Medispan hierarchical drug codes for identifying drugs down to manufacturer and pill size. Proprietary product of MediSpan, Inc., 8425 Woodfield Crossing Boulevard, Indianapolis, IN 46240. Tel: (800) 428-4495.	Drug code

Value	Description	Comment / Source	Category
MVX	CDC Vaccine Manufacturer Codes	As above, for CVX Drug cod	
NDA	NANDA	North American Nursing Diagnosis Association, Philadelphia, PA.	Specific Non- Drug Code
NDC	National drug codes	These provide unique codes for each distinct drug, dosing form, manufacturer, and packaging. (Available from the National Drug Code Directory, FDA, Rockville, MD, and other sources.)	Drug code
NIC	Nursing Interventions Classification	Iowa Intervention Project, College of Nursing, University of Iowa, Iowa City, Iowa	Specific Non- Drug Code
NPI	National Provider Identifier	Health Care Finance Administration, US Dept. of Health and Human Services, 7500 Security Blvd., Baltimore, MD 21244.	Specific Non- Drug Code
NUBC	National Uniform Billing Committee Code		
ОНА	Omaha System	Omaha Visiting Nurse Association, Omaha, NB.	Specific Non- Drug Code
ОНА	Omaha	Omaha Visiting Nurse Association, Omaha, NB.	Specific Non- Drug Code
POS	POS Codes	HCFA Place of Service Codes for Professional Claims (See http://www.cms.hhs.gov/PlaceofServiceCodes/	Specific Non- Drug Code
RC	Read Classification	The Read Clinical Classification of Medicine, Park View Surgery, 26 Leicester Rd., Loughborough LE11 2AG (includes drug procedure and other codes, as well as diagnostic codes).	Specific Non- Drug Code
SDM	SNOMED- DICOM Microglossary	College of American Pathologists, Skokie, IL, 60077-1034. (formerly designated as 99SDM).	Specific Non- Drug Code
SNM	Systemized Nomenclature of Medicine (SNOMED)	Systemized Nomenclature of Medicine, 2 nd Edition 1984 Vols 1, 2, College of American Pathologists, Skokie, IL.	Specific Non- Drug Code
SNM3	SNOMED International	SNOMED International, 1993 Vols 1-4, College of American Pathologists, Skokie, IL, 60077-1034.	Specific Non- Drug Code
SNT	SNOMED topology codes (anatomic sites)	College of American Pathologists, 5202 Old Orchard Road, Skokie, IL 60077-1034.	Specific Non- Drug Code
UC	UCDS	Uniform Clinical Data Systems. Ms. Michael McMullan, Office of Peer Review Health Care Finance Administration, The Meadows East Bldg., 6325 Security Blvd., Baltimore, MD 21207; (301) 966 6851.	Specific Non- Drug Code
UMD	MDNS	Universal Medical Device Nomenclature System. ECRI, 5200 Butler Pike, Plymouth Meeting, PA 19462 USA. Phone: 215-825-6000, Fax: 215-834-1275.	Device code
UML	Unified Medical Language	National Library of Medicine, 8600 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20894.	Specific Non- Drug Code
UPC	Universal Product Code	The Uniform Code Council. 8163 Old Yankee Road, Suite J, Dayton, OH 45458; (513) 435 3070	Specific Non- Drug Code
UPIN	UPIN	Medicare/CMS 's (formerly HCFA) universal physician identification numbers, available from Health Care Financing Administration, U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, Bureau of Program Operations, 6325 Security Blvd., Meadows East Bldg., Room 300, Baltimore, MD 21207	Specific Non- Drug Code
USPS	United States Postal Service	Two Letter State and Possession Abbreviations are listed in Publication 28, Postal Addressing Standards which can be obtained from Address Information	Specific Non- Drug Code

Value	Description	Comment / Source	Category
		Products, National Address Information Center, 6060 Primacy Parkway, Suite 101, Memphis, Tennessee 38188-0001 Questions of comments regarding the publication should be addressed to the Office of Address and Customer Information Systems, Customer and Automation Service Department, US Postal Service, 475 Lenfant Plaza SW Rm 7801, Washington, DC 20260-5902	
W1	WHO record # drug codes (6 digit)	World Health organization record number code. A unique sequential number is assigned to each unique single component drug and to each multi-component drug. Eight digits are allotted to each such code, six to identify the active agent, and 2 to identify the salt, of single content drugs. Six digits are assigned to each unique combination of drugs in a dispensing unit. The six digit code is identified by W1, the 8 digit code by W2.	Drug code
W2	WHO record # drug codes (8 digit)	World Health organization record number code. A unique sequential number is assigned to each unique single component drug and to each multi-component drug. Eight digits are allotted to each such code, six to identify the active agent, and 2 to identify the salt, of single content drugs. Six digits are assigned to each unique combination of drugs in a dispensing unit. The six digit code is identified by W1, the 8 digit code by W2.	Drug code
W4	WHO record # code with ASTM extension	With ASTM extensions (see Implementation Guide), the WHO codes can be used to report serum (and other) levels, patient compliance with drug usage instructions, average daily doses and more (see Appendix X1 the Implementation Guide).	Drug code
WC	WHO ATC	WHO's ATC codes provide a hierarchical classification of drugs by therapeutic class. They are linked to the record number codes listed above.	Drug code

2.17.5 Yes/no indicator table

The actual interpretation of Yes/No is context sensitive. Individual chapters will further refine the meaning of Yes/No in their specific context.

HL7 Table 0136 - Yes/no indicator

Value	Description	Comment
Υ	Yes	
N	No	

2.17.6 Expanded yes/no indicator table

This table expands on the original Yes/no indicator table by including "flavors of null". It is intended to be applied to fields where the response is not limited to "yes" or "no".

Use Case: A reporting facility/person has little or no information on a particular event or outcome and these are reported as unknown for public health reporting purposes.

Value	Description	Comment
Υ	Yes	
N	No	
NI	No Information	No information whatsoever can be inferred from this exceptional value. This is the most general exceptional value. It is also the default exceptional value
NA	not applicable	No proper value is applicable in this context (e.g., last menstrual period for a male
UNK	unknown	A proper value is applicable, but not known
NASK	not asked	This information has not been sought (e.g., patient was not asked
ASKU	asked but unknown	Information was sought but not found (e.g., patient was asked but didn't know
NAV	temporarily unavailable	Information is not available at this time but it is expected that it will be available later
NP	not present	Value is not present in a message. This is only defined in messages, never in application data! All values not present in the message must be replaced by the applicable default, or noinformation (NI) as the default of all defaults

HL7 Table 0532 - Expanded yes/no indicator

2.18

SAMPLE CONTROL MESSAGES

2.18.1 General acknowledgment

LAB acknowledges the message that ADT sent identified as ZZ9380. (LAB and ADT, the sending and receiving system IDs, are site-defined.) Both systems are associated with the same FACILITY, 767543. The **AA** code in the MSA segment indicates that the message was accepted by the application.

```
MSH|^~\&|LAB|767543|ADT|767543|19900314130405||ACK^A08^ACK
|XX3657|P|2.5<cr>
MSA|AA|ZZ9380<cr>
```

2.18.2 General acknowledgement, error return

The **AR** code in MSA indicates that the application rejected the message for functional reasons. The optional ERR segment includes here that the 16th field of the PID segment with the SET ID value of 1 had an error which was defined by the locally-established code X3L. The optional text message UNKNOWN COUNTY CODE in the link is designed to help programmers and support personnel while reviewing message logs.

```
MSH|^~\&|LAB|767543|ADT|767543|199003141304-0500||ACK^A08^ACK
|XX3657|P|2.5<cr>
MSA|AR|ZZ9380| <cr>
ERR| |PID^1^11^^9|103|E<cr>
```

2.18.3 Message using sequence number: protocol

The sender initiates the link with a message that has no functional content. The sequence number is 0. The message type and event code are not used.

```
MSH|^~\&|ADT|767543|LAB|767543|199003141304-
0500||ADT^A08^ADT_A01|XX3657|P|2.5|0<cr>
```

The responder uses a general acknowledgment. The expected sequence number is 1.

```
MSH|^~\&|LAB|767543|ADT|767543|199003141304-0500||ACK^A08^ACK
|ZZ9380|P|2.5<cr>
MSA|AA|XX3657||1<cr>
```

See section 2.10.1, "Sequence number protocol" for further detail.

2.18.4 Message fragmentation

This summarizes the methodology for splitting a single logical HL7 message among two or more actual HL7 messages. The actual specifications for this, the segment definitions of the ADD and DSC segments, and examples are in Section 2.10.2, "Continuation messages and segments".

Continuing of messages is a generic methodology that can be used for all HL7 message types. It can be used to split based on segment boundaries, on field boundaries, and to split a single field among several messages. It utilizes two specific segments, ADD and DSC, as well as a field in the message header, *MSH-14-Continuation pointer*.

When a message is continued, a unique continuation value is used. This same value will appear in MSH-14 and DSC-1 as appropriate for a single pair of messages. This allows messages to be "chained together".

Here are two examples of ways to create continuation pointers for fragmented messages. The only absolute requirement is that when the sending application values the continuation pointer, the receiving application can appropriately reconstruct the message.

Sitecode-interfaceapplicationcode-date-sequentialcounterwithindate

This will guarantee uniqueness of this field.

e.g. BWH-LDS-19990331-27 for the 27^{th} large message to be created on March 31, within the Discharge Summary interfaces at BWH

An alternative method of valuing the continuation pointer:

Sitecode-interfaceapplicationcode-medicalrecordnumber-datetime

e.g. MGH-PCIS-1234567-19980331121314 for a message created on March 31, at 12:13:14pm for patient medical record number 1234567, within the PCIS interfaces at MGH

Sending Application Note: In the ADD segment, a trailing field delimiter, i.e. the vertical bar character, after the final field, has explicit meaning. The sending application should not include a trailing field delimiter for the last field in the ADD segment unless it has completely valued the entire field from the message being continued.

Receiving Application Note: The receiving application will need to be concerned with a single segment and a single field being continued.

Receiving a message with an empty ADD segment followed by a DSC segment is the notification that the segment preceding the ADD is being continued in a subsequent message. Note that the continuing message may not be the next one received! The receiver must match up the continuation pointer value from MSH-14 of subsequent messages to the DSC-1 continuation pointer value of the prior message. Also if the continuing message contains an ADD segment, the receiver should continue appending to the fields from the segment being continued with values from the ADD segment. For example, if OBX-5 is being continued, the continuation will appear in ADD-1 of the continuing message. If there were a value for OBX-13 of the original message, that would appear in ADD-9 of the continuing message, assuming that the remainder of the OBX segment fit into the single ADD segment.

Question: if continuing a message after the completion of a complete segment, should the continuing message have an empty ADD segment or not? Answer: No. This means that a continuing message need not have an ADD segment, if the continued message was split on a segment boundary.

Notation conventions: items within angle brackets are comments and not intended to represent a portion of an actual message. For example, <this is a comment>.

Note the multiple continuation pointer values, one for each pair of physical messages.

Message 1

```
MSH|...|<field-13>||...
PID|...
ORC|...
OBC|...
OBX|1|FT|^Discharge Summary|1|This is the first sentence of a long message. This is the second sentence of a long message.
<snip>
This is the 967th sentence of "
ADD|
DSC|BWH-LDS-19990405-6|
```

Message 2

```
MSH|...|<field-13>|BWH-LDS-19990405-6|

ADD|a long message. This is the 968th sentence of a long message.

<snip>
This is the 1001st line of

<there should be no trailing field delimiter after the last field in this ADD segment>

DSC|BWH-LDS-19990405-7|
```

Message 3

The following examples discuss an unsolicited transmission of an observation message, ORU^R01.

The expected result values in OBX-5, Observation Value, for reports (e.g. autopsy, pathology) may exceed the message length restrictions of one or more interfaces.

Thus the OBX-5, Observation Value data element will be split into more than one message.

Here's an example intended to illustrate the interpretation of Chapter 2 and 7. It reflects a single logical message broken up into three distinct messages.

Example 1, a single field being split across three messages

Message #1: -----

```
Note: MSH-14, continuation pointer, is empty.
     MSH|...|<field-13>||...
     PID ...
     ORC | ...
     OBR | ...
     OBX|1|FT|^Discharge Summary|1|This is the first sentence of a long
     message. This is the second sentence of a long message.
     <snip>
     This is the 967<sup>th</sup> sentence of "
     ADD |
     DSC | < continuation - pointer - value - 1 > | F
     Message #2: -----
     Note: MSH-14, continuation pointer, is valued with the same value as in
        DSC-1, continuation pointer from the message this is continuing, in
        this case Message #1.
     MSH | ... | <field-13 > | <continuation-pointer-value-1 > |
     ADD|a long message. This is the 968th sentence of a long message.
     <snip>
     This is the 1001st line of
     <there should be no trailing field delimiter after the last field in
         this ADD segment>
     DSC | <continuation-pointer-value-2> | F
     Message #3: ------
     Note: MSH-14, continuation pointer, is valued with the same value as in
        DSC-1, continuation pointer from the message this is continuing, in
         this case Message #1.
```

Health Level Seven, Version 2.5.1 $\ensuremath{\text{@}}$ 2007. All rights reserved

Example 2, a single message being split across two messages, but on segment boundaries

Message #1: -----

Note: MSH-14, continuation pointer, is empty.

```
MSH|...|<field-13>||...
PID|...
ORC|...
OBC|...
OBX|1|FT|^Discharge Summary|1|This is the first sentence of a long message. This is the final sentence of this long discharge summary!|||||F||199707211325|
DSC|<continuation-pointer-value-3>|F
```

Message #2: -----

Note: MSH-14, continuation pointer, is valued with the same value as in DSC-1, continuation pointer from the message this is continuing, in this case Message #1.

Note that no ADD segment is necessary, since a segment is not being split across two messages.

```
MSH|...|<field-13>|<continuation-pointer-value-3>|
PR1|...
DG1|...
```

2.18.5 Acknowledgement message using original mode processing

This example shows the lab system using the Master Files specification to send two update test dictionary entries to an ICU system.

Initiating Message:

```
MSH|^~\&|LABxxx|ClinLAB|ICU||19910918060544||MFN^M03^MFN_M03|MSGID002|P|
2.5
MFI|LABxxx^Lab Test Dictionary^L|UPD|||AL
```

Page 2-116

```
MFE | MUP | 199109051000 | 199110010000 | 12345^WBC^L
OM1 | . . .
MFE | MUP | 199109051015 | 199110010000 | 6789^RBC^L
OM1 | . . .
```

Response Message: Original mode acknowledgment of the HL7 message according to MFI Response Level Code of AL.

```
MSH|^~\&|ICU||LABxxx|ClinLAB|19910918060545||MFK^M03^MFK_M01|MSGID99002|
P|2.5

MSA|AA|MSGID002

MFI|LABxxx^Lab Test Dictionary^L|UPD|||MFAA

MFA|MUP|199110010000|199110010040|S|12345^WBC^L

MFA|MUP|199110010000|199110010041|S|6789^RBC^L
```

2.18.6 Acknowledgement message using enhanced mode processing

Initial message with accept acknowledgment

```
MSH|^~\&|LABxxx|ClinLAB|ICU||19910918060544||MFN^M03|MSGID002|P|2.2|||AL | AL | MFI|LABxxx^Lab Test Dictionary^L|UPD|||AL | MFE|MUP|199109051000|199110010000|12345^WBC^L | OM1|... | MFE|MUP|199109051015|199110010000|6789^RBC^L | OM1|... | MSH|^~\&|ICU||LABxxx|ClinLAB|19910918060545||MSA|MSGID99002|P|2.2 | MSA|CA|MSGID002
```

Application acknowledgment message

```
MSH|^~\&|ICU||LABxxx|ClinLAB|19911001080504||MFK|MSGID5002|P|2.2|||AL|
MSA|AA|MSGID002

MFI|LABxxx^Lab Test Dictionary^L|UPD|||MFAA

MFA|MUP|199109051000|199110010040|S|12345^WBC^L

MFA|MUP|199109051015|199110010041|S|6789^RBC^L

MSH|^~\&|LABxxx|ClinLAB|ICU||19911001080507||ACK|MSGID444|P|2.2

MSA|CA|MSGID5002
```

2.19 MESSAGE PROFILE DOCUMENT DEFINITION

The Conformance SIG researched the various ways to express the structure of the message profile document. The Document Type Definition (DTD) allows for declaring constraints on the use of markup.

XML Schema Language provides a more rigorous and comprehensive framework for automated processing of XML documents.⁹

The message profile DTD and schema are both included here. The message profile schema is normative in order to express the rules by which the registry will validate (See section 2.12, "Conformance Using Message Profiles").

2.19.1 Message profile schema

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!-- edited with XML Spy v4.4 U (http://www.xmlspy.com) by Jennifer Puyenbroek (HL7
Control Query TC) -->
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" elementFormDefault="qualified">
 <xs:element name="HL7v2xConformanceProfile">
   <xs:annotation>
    <xs:documentation>An unambiguous specification of one or more standard HL7 messages
that have been analyzed for a particular use case. It prescribes a set of precise
constraints upon one or more standard HL7 messages.</xs:documentation>
   </xs:annotation>
   <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="MetaData" type="MetaDataType">
       <xs:annotation>
         <xs:documentation>Provides descriptive information about the life-cycle of the
HL7v2xConformanceProfile, as well as authorship and control
information.</xs:documentation>
       </r></r></r></r>
      </xs:element>
      <xs:element name="ImpNote" type="ImpNoteType" minOccurs="0">
       <xs:annotation>
         <xs:documentation>Implementation Notes provide a general description about how
the profile is intended to be used, as well as hints on using or interpreting the
profile.</xs:documentation>
       </xs:annotation>
      </xs:element>
      <xs:element name="UseCase">
       <xs:annotation>
         <xs:documentation>A use case model documents the scope and requirements for an
HL7 message profile or set of message profiles.</xs:documentation>
       </xs:annotation>
       <xs:complexType>
         <xs:sequence>
          <xs:element name="Purpose" type="NonEmptyStringType" minOccurs="0">
             <xs:documentation>Identifies the reason and/or objectives for the
usecase</xs:documentation>
            </xs:annotation>
          </xs:element>
          <xs:element name="Description" type="NonEmptyStringType" minOccurs="0">
            <xs:annotation>
             <xs:documentation>Descriptive text for the use-case. In cases where the use-
case is not broken down into component elements, this will include the complete details of
the usecase. Otherwise, it will contain a basic overview.</xs:documentation>
            </xs:annotation>
          </xs:element>
          <xs:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <xs:element name="Actor" type="UseCaseElementType">
               <xs:documentation>Identifies and defines the entities involved in the use-
case. This includes the sending and receiving applications</xs:documentation>
             </xs:annotation>
            </xs:element>
```

Page 2-118

Refer to the World Wide Web Consortium web site for their recommendations for DTD (http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml) and schema (http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-0, http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1, and http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2).

```
<xs:element name="PreCondition" type="UseCaseElementType">
              <xs:annotation>
               <xs:documentation>Identifies a circumstance that must hold true prior to
the use-case being invoked.</xs:documentation>
              </xs:annotation>
            </xs:element>
            <xs:element name="PostCondition" type="UseCaseElementType">
              <xs:annotation>
               <xs:documentation>Identifies a circumstance that will hold true after the
successful completion of the use-case.</xs:documentation>
             </xs:annotation>
            </xs:element>
            <xs:element name="EventFlow" type="UseCaseElementType">
             <xs:annotation>
               <xs:documentation>Identifies a step within the chain of occurrences that
lead to the successful completion of the use-case. This includes the exchange of messages
between applications.</xs:documentation>
             </xs:annotation>
            </xs:element>
            <xs:element name="DerivedEvent" type="UseCaseElementType">
             <xs:annotation>
               <xs:documentation/>
             </xs:annotation>
            </xs:element>
           </xs:choice>
         </xs:sequence>
       </xs:complexType>
       <xs:key name="ActorNamesUniqueInUseCase">
         <xs:selector xpath="Actor"/>
         <xs:field xpath="@Name"/>
       </xs:key>
       <xs:key name="PreConditionNamesUniqueInUseCase">
         <xs:selector xpath="PreCondition"/>
         <xs:field xpath="@Name"/>
       </xs:key>
       <xs:key name="PostConditionNamesUniqueInUseCase">
         <xs:selector xpath="PostCondition"/>
         <xs:field xpath="@Name"/>
       </xs:kev>
       <xs:key name="EventFlowNamesUniqueInUseCase">
         <xs:selector xpath="EventFlow"/>
         <xs:field xpath="@Name"/>
       </xs:key>
       <xs:key name="DerivedEventNamesUniqueInUseCase">
         <xs:selector xpath="DerivedEvent"/>
         <xs:field xpath="@Name"/>
       </xs:kev>
      </xs:element>
      <xs:element name="Encodings">
       <xs:annotation>
         <xs:documentation>Identifies all of the message encoding mechanisms supported by
the profile. Non-traditional encoding mechanisms may be identified if
desired.</xs:documentation>
       </xs:annotation>
       <xs:complexType>
         <xs:sequence>
           <xs:element name="Encoding" maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <xs:annotation>
             <xs:documentation>Identifies one of the encoding mechanisms supported by the
profile.</xs:documentation>
            </xs:annotation>
            <xs:simpleType>
              <xs:union memberTypes="xs:NMTOKEN">
               <xs:simpleType>
                <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
                  <xs:enumeration value="ER7"/>
                  <xs:enumeration value="XML"/>
                 </xs:restriction>
               </xs:simpleType>
              </xs:union>
```

```
</xs:simpleType>
          </xs:element>
         </xs:sequence>
       </xs:complexType>
       <xs:key name="EncodingUniqueInEncodings">
         <xs:selector xpath="Encoding"/>
         <xs:field xpath="."/>
       </xs:key>
      </xs:element>
      <xs:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <xs:element name="DynamicDef">
         <xs:annotation>
          <xs:documentation>The dynamic definition is an interaction specification for a
conversation between 2 or more systems.</xs:documentation>
         </xs:annotation>
         <xs:complexType>
          <xs:attribute name="AccAck" type="AcknowledgmentType" default="NE">
            <xs:annotation>
             <xs:documentation>Identifies when and if HL7 'Accept' acknowledgments are
required. Allowed values are: AL (always), NE (never), SU (on success), ER (on error).
Default is 'NE'.</xs:documentation>
            </xs:annotation>
          </xs:attribute>
          <xs:attribute name="AppAck" type="AcknowledgmentType" default="AL">
            <xs:annotation>
             <xs:documentation>Identifies when and if \mbox{HL7} 'Application' acknowledgments
are required. Allowed values are: AL (always), NE (never), SU (on success), ER (on error).
Default is 'AL'.</xs:documentation>
            </xs:annotation>
           </xs:attribute>
          <xs:attribute name="MsgAckMode" default="Deferred">
            <xs:annotation>
             <xs:documentation>Identifies the type of acknowledgment expected by the
sender of a message. Allowed values are: Immediate and Deferred. Default is
Immediate.</xs:documentation>
            </xs:annotation>
            <xs:simpleType>
             <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
               <xs:enumeration value="Immediate"/>
               <xs:enumeration value="Deferred"/>
             </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
           </xs:attribute>
          <xs:attribute name="QueryMessageType" default="NonQuery">
            <xs:annotation>
             <xs:documentation>Identifies whether the message is query-related, and if
so, what type of query message it is. Allowed values are: NonQuery, Query, Response and
Publish. Default is NonQuery.
             </xs:documentation>
            </xs:annotation>
            <xs:simpleType>
             <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
               <xs:enumeration value="NonQuery"/>
               <xs:enumeration value="Query"/>
               <xs:enumeration value="Response"/>
               <xs:enumeration value="Publish"/>
              </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
           </xs:attribute>
           <xs:attribute name="QueryMode" default="RealTime">
            <xs:annotation>
             <xs:documentation>Identifies the type of query being performed. Allowed
values are: Batch, RealTime or Both.</xs:documentation>
            </xs:annotation>
            <xs:simpleType>
             <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
               <xs:enumeration value="Batch"/>
               <xs:enumeration value="RealTime"/>
               <xs:enumeration value="Both"/>
              </xs:restriction>
```

```
</xs:simpleType>
           </xs:attribute>
         </xs:complexType>
       </xs:element>
       <xs:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
         <xs:element ref="HL7v2xStaticDef"/>
         <xs:element name="HL7v2xStaticDefRef">
           <xs:annotation>
            <xs:documentation>Provides an identifier reference to the static definition
for one of the messages used by the profile.</xs:documentation>
          </xs:annotation>
          <xs:complexType>
            <xs:attribute name="Identifier" type="IdentifierType" use="required">
             <xs:annotation>
               <xs:documentation>The identifier for the static definition being
referenced.</xs:documentation>
             </xs:annotation>
            </xs:attribute>
          </xs:complexType>
         </xs:element>
       </xs:choice>
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:sequence>
    <xs:attribute name="HL7Version" use="required">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Identifies the HL7 2.x version on which the profile is based and
with which it is expected to comply.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
      <xs:simpleType>
       <xs:union memberTypes="xs:NMTOKEN">
         <xs:simpleType>
          <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
            <xs:enumeration value="2.0"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="2.0D"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="2.1"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="2.2"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="2.3"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="2.3.1"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="2.4"/>
            <xs:enumeration value="2.5"/>
          </xs:restriction>
         </xs:simpleType>
       </xs:union>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:attribute>
    <xs:attribute name="ProfileType" use="required">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Categorizes the profile into one of 3 types: HL7 - represents a
specific HL7 published standard (may only be submitted by the HL7 Organization);
Constrainable - May contain "Optional" elements which must be further constrained in order
to create implementation profiles; Implementation - Fully constrained with no optionality
(reflects the behavior of a runtime system)</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
      <xs:simpleType>
       <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
         <xs:enumeration value="Implementation"/>
         <xs:enumeration value="Constrainable"/>
       </xs:restriction>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:attribute>
    <xs:attribute name="Identiifer" type="IdentifierType">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>A unique identifier for this specific version of this dynamic
profile. If not specified, one will be assigned to the profile upon submission to a
registry.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:attribute>
   </xs:complexType>
 </xs:element>
```

```
<xs:element name="HL7v2xStaticDef">
   <xs:annotation>
    <xs:documentation>This represents a detailed profile of a single message. It provides
a detailed breakdown of exactly what the message may contain, including optionality and
cardinality.</xs:documentation>
   </xs:annotation>
   <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name="MetaData" type="MetaDataType" minOccurs="0">
       <xs:annotation>
         <xs:documentation>Provides descriptive information about the life-cycle of the
HL7 v2x Static Definition, as well as authorship and control
information.</xs:documentation>
       </xs:annotation>
      </xs:element>
      <xs:group ref="MessageGroup"/>
      <xs:element name="Segment" type="SegmentType">
       <xs:annotation>
         <xs:documentation>Documents the characteristics of a single HL7 segment within
the context of a particular message or segment group.</xs:documentation>
       </xs:annotation>
      </xs:element>
      <xs:group ref="SegGroupOrSegmentGrouping" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </xs:sequence>
    <xs:attribute name="MsgType" type="MsgTypeType" use="required">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>The HL7 message type code, as identified in MSH-9.1 (see HL7
Table 0076 - Message type).</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:attribute>
    <xs:attribute name="EventType" type="EventTypeType" use="required">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>The HL7 event type code, as identified in MSH-9.2 (see HL7 Table
0003 - Event type)</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:attribute>
    <xs:attribute name="MsgStructID" type="MsgStructIDType">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>The HL7 message structure code, as identified in MSH-9.3 (see
HL7 Table 0354 - Message Structure Type). </xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </re>
    <xs:attribute name="OrderControl" type="OrderControlType">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>The HL7 Order control code, as identified in ORC 1 (see HL7
Table 0119 - Order Control Codes).</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:attribute>
    <xs:attribute name="EventDesc" type="NonEmptyStringType" use="required">
       <xs:documentation>A description of the event carried by this
message.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:attribute>
    <xs:attribute name="Identifier" type="IdentifierType" use="optional">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>A unique identifier for this specific version of this static
definition. If not specified, one will be assigned to the profile upon submission to a
registry.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:attribute>
    <xs:attribute name="Role" default="Sender">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Identifies whether the profile is constructed from the
perspective of the message generator (Sender) or parser (Receiver). Default is
'Sender'.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
      <xs:simpleType>
       <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
         <xs:enumeration value="Sender"/>
```

```
<xs:enumeration value="Receiver"/>
       </xs:restriction>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:attribute>
   </xs:complexType>
 </xs:element>
 <xs:complexType name="UseCaseElementType">
   <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="NonEmptyStringType">
      <xs:attribute name="Name" type="NonEmptyStringType" use="required">
         <xs:documentation>The unique name or number associated with a particular use-case
element.</xs:documentation>
       </re>
      </xs:attribute>
    </xs:extension>
   </xs:simpleContent>
 </xs:complexType>
 <xs:complexType name="MetaDataType">
   <xs:attribute name="Name" type="NonEmptyStringType" use="required">
    <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>Provides a name that clearly and concisely defines the message
exchange being profiled.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute name="OrgName" type="NonEmptyStringType" use="required">
    <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>Name of the organization that submitted the
profile.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute name="Version" type="NonEmptyStringType" use="optional">
    <xs:annotation>
     <xs:documentation>The version identifier assigned to this profile by the author.
There is no prescribed version numbering scheme. However 'higher' versions should
generally be interpreted to be more resent.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute name="Status" type="NonEmptyStringType" use="optional">
     <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>Status of this profile, as assigned by the author. There is no
prescribed status scheme at this time. Possible values might include: 'Draft', 'Active',
 Superceded', 'Withdrawn'</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute name="Topics" type="NonEmptyStringType" use="optional">
    <xs:annotation>
     <xs:documentation>This provides a list of key-words that relate to the profile and
that may be useful in profile searches.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
 </xs:complexType>
 <xs:group name="SegGroupOrSegmentGrouping">
   <xs:choice>
    <xs:element name="SegGroup">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Documents the characteristics of a grouping of HL7 segments
within the context of a particular message or segment group.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
      <xs:complexType>
       <xs:sequence>
         <xs:group ref="MessageElementsGroup"/>
         <xs:group ref="SegGroupOrSegmentGrouping" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
       </xs:sequence>
       <xs:attribute name="Name" use="required">
         <xs:annotation>
          <xs:documentation>This is the short, formal name for the group. It appears in
the tag name when using the XML Encoding syntax.</xs:documentation>
         </xs:annotation>
         <xs:simpleType>
```

```
<xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
            <xs:pattern value="([A-Z]|_)+"/>
          </xs:restriction>
         </xs:simpleType>
       </xs:attribute>
       <xs:attribute ref="LongName" use="required"/>
       <xs:attribute ref="Usage" use="required"/>
       <xs:attributeGroup ref="RepeatableElementAttributes"/>
      </xs:complexType>
    </xs:element>
    <xs:element name="Segment" type="SegmentType">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Documents the characteristics of a single HL7 segment within the
context of a particular message or segment group.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:element>
   </xs:choice>
 </xs:group>
 <xs:complexType name="SegmentType">
   <xs:sequence>
    <xs:group ref="MessageElementsGroup"/>
    <xs:element name="Field" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Documents the characteristics of a single HL7 field within the
context of a particular message segment.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
      <xs:complexType>
       <xs:sequence>
         <xs:group ref="LeafMessageElementsGroup"/>
         <xs:element name="Component" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <xs:annotation>
            <xs:documentation>Documents the characteristics of a single component within
the context of a field.</xs:documentation>
          </xs:annotation>
          <xs:complexType>
            <xs:sequence>
             <xs:group ref="LeafMessageElementsGroup"/>
              <xs:element name="SubComponent" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
               <xs:annotation>
                \verb|<xs:| documentation>| Documents | the characteristics | of a single | sub-component |
within the context of a component.</xs:documentation>
               </xs:annotation>
               <xs:complexType>
                <xs:group ref="LeafMessageElementsGroup"/>
                <xs:attributeGroup ref="LeafElementAttributes"/>
               </xs:complexType>
             </xs:element>
            </xs:sequence>
            <xs:attributeGroup ref="LeafElementAttributes"/>
          </xs:complexType>
         </xs:element>
       </xs:sequence>
       <xs:attributeGroup ref="RepeatableElementAttributes"/>
       <xs:attributeGroup ref="LeafElementAttributes"/>
       <xs:attribute name="ItemNo">
         <xs:annotation>
           <xs:documentation>The HL7-assigned item number corresponding with the semantic
meaning of the field.</xs:documentation>
         </xs:annotation>
         <xs:simpleType>
          <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
           <xs:pattern value="\d{5}"/>
          </xs:restriction>
         </xs:simpleType>
       </xs:attribute>
      </xs:complexType>
    </xs:element>
   </xs:sequence>
   <xs:attribute name="Name" type="SegmentNameType" use="required">
    <xs:annotation>
```

```
<xs:documentation>This is the short, formal name for the segment. It is used to
identify the segment in both ER7 and XML encodings.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute ref="LongName"/>
   <xs:attribute ref="Usage" use="required"/>
   <xs:attributeGroup ref="RepeatableElementAttributes"/>
 </xs:complexType>
 <xs:attributeGroup name="LeafElementAttributes">
   <xs:attribute name="Name" type="NonEmptyStringType" use="required">
    <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>The descriptive name for the field/component/sub-
component</xs:documentation>
    </re>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute ref="Usage" use="required"/>
   <xs:attribute name="Datatype" type="DatatypeType" use="required">
    <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>Identifies the HL7 datatype associated with the
element.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute name="Length" type="xs:positiveInteger">
    <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>Identifies the maximum allowed length for the content of the
element.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute name="Table" type="TableType">
    <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>Identifies the name of the table associated with the content of
this element.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute name="ConstantValue" type="NonEmptyStringType">
      <xs:documentation>Identifies the fixed value associated with this
element</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
    <!-- Can only have constant values for leaf elements -->
   </xs:attribute>
 </xs:attributeGroup>
 <xs:attributeGroup name="RepeatableElementAttributes">
   <xs:attribute name="Min" type="xs:nonNegativeInteger" use="required">
      <xs:documentation>This identifies the minimum number of repetitions of the element
that are permitted in a message instance. This attribute should only be specified if the
minimum number of repetitions is greater than 1, as the minimum for other elements is
always '0'.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
   </xs:attribute>
   <xs:attribute name="Max" use="required">
    <xs:annotation>
      <xs:documentation>This identifies the maximum number of repetitions of the element
that are permitted in a message instance. This attribute should only be specified if the
maximum number of repetitions is greater than 1 and differs from the minimum attribute
(i.e. the maximum number of repetitions is greater than the minimum number of
repetitions). The special value '*' may be used to represent 'unlimited'
repetitions.</xs:documentation>
    </xs:annotation>
    <xs:simpleType>
      <xs:union>
       <xs:simpleType>
         <xs:restriction base="xs:positiveInteger">
          <xs:minInclusive value="1"/>
         </xs:restriction>
       </xs:simpleType>
       <xs:simpleType>
         <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
          <xs:enumeration value="*"/>
```

```
</xs:restriction>
       </xs:simpleType>
      </xs:union>
    </xs:simpleType>
   </xs:attribute>
 </xs:attributeGroup>
 <xs:simpleType name="ImpNoteType">
   <xs:restriction base="NonEmptyStringType"/>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:group name="MessageGroup">
   <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name="ImpNote" type="ImpNoteType" minOccurs="0">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Implementation Notes provide a general description about how the
element is intended to be used, as well as hints on using or interpreting the
it.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:element>
    <xs:element name="Description" type="NonEmptyStringType" minOccurs="0">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Provides an explanation or definition of what the element
represents.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
    </xs:element>
    <xs:element name="Reference" minOccurs="0">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Identifies external sources or other locations within the
profile where additional information can be found about this item.</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
      <xs:simpleType>
       <xs:restriction base="NonEmptyStringType"/>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:element>
   </xs:sequence>
 </xs:group>
 <xs:group name="MessageElementsGroup">
   <xs:sequence>
    <xs:group ref="MessageGroup"/>
    <xs:element name="Predicate" minOccurs="0">
      <xs:annotation>
       <xs:documentation>Identifies the conditionality rule for this element, if
applicable</xs:documentation>
      </xs:annotation>
      <xs:simpleType>
       <xs:restriction base="NonEmptyStringType"/>
     </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:element>
   </xs:sequence>
 </xs:group>
 <xs:group name="LeafMessageElementsGroup">
   <xs:sequence>
    <xs:group ref="MessageElementsGroup"/>
    <xs:element name="DataValues" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <xs:complexType>
       <xs:attribute name="ExValue" type="NonEmptyStringType">
         <xs:annotation>
          <xs:documentation>Identifies an individual example value.</xs:documentation>
        </xs:annotation>
       </xs:attribute>
      </xs:complexType>
    </xs:element>
   </xs:sequence>
 </xs:group>
 <xs:attribute name="Usage">
   <xs:annotation>
    <xs:documentation>Usage identifies the circumstances under which an element appears
in a message. Possible values are:
     R - Required (must always be present);
     RE - Required or Empty (must be present if available);
     O - Optional (no guidance on when the element should appear);
```

```
C - Conditional (the element is required or allowed to be present when the condition
specified in the Predicate element is true);
      CE - Conditional or Empty (the element is required or allowed to be present when the
condition specified in the Predicate element is true and the information is available)
     X - Not supported (the element will not be sent)
    </xs:documentation>
   </xs:annotation>
   <xs:simpleType>
    <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
      <xs:enumeration value="R"/>
      <xs:enumeration value="RE"/>
      <xs:enumeration value="0"/>
      <xs:enumeration value="C"/>
     <xs:enumeration value="CE"/>
      <xs:enumeration value="X"/>
    </xs:restriction>
   </xs:simpleType>
 </xs:attribute>
 <xs:attribute name="LongName" type="NonEmptyStringType">
   <xs:annotation>
    <xs:documentation>This is the descriptive name for the element. It does not appear in
any encodings.</xs:documentation>
   </xs:annotation>
 </xs:attribute>
 <xs:simpleType name="NonEmptyStringType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
    <xs:minLength value="1"/>
   </xs:restriction>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:simpleType name="AcknowledgmentType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
    <xs:enumeration value="AL"/>
    <xs:enumeration value="NE"/>
    <xs:enumeration value="SU"/>
    <xs:enumeration value="ER"/>
   </xs:restriction>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:simpleType name="IdentifierType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
    <xs:pattern value="(0|[1-9][0-9]*)(\.(0|[1-9][0-9]*))*"/>
   </xs:restriction>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:simpleType name="MsgTypeType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
    <xs:pattern value="[A-Z0-9]{3}"/>
   </xs:restriction>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:simpleType name="EventTypeType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
    <xs:pattern value="[A-Z0-9]{3}"/>
   </xs:restriction>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:simpleType name="MsgStructIDType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
    <xs:pattern value="[A-Z0-9]{3}(_[A-Z0-9]{3})?"/>
   </xs:restriction>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:simpleType name="OrderControlType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
    <xs:pattern value="[A-Z]{2}"/>
   </xs:restriction>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:simpleType name="DatatypeType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
    <xs:minLength value="1"/>
   </xs:restriction>
 </xs:simpleType>
 <xs:simpleType name="SegmentNameType">
   <xs:restriction base="xs:NMTOKEN">
    <xs:pattern value="[A-Z][A-Z0-9]{2}"/>
```

April 2007.

Page 2-127

2.19.2 Message profile DTD

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!-- edited with XML Spy v4.4 U (http://www.xmlspy.com) by Jennifer Puyenbroek (HL7 Control Query
TC) -->
<!ENTITY % Usage "R | RE | O | C | CE | X">
<!ELEMENT HL7v2xConformanceProfile (MetaData, ImpNote?, UseCase, Encodings, (DynamicDef,
(HL7v2xStaticDef | HL7v2xStaticDefRef))+)>
<!ATTLIST HL7v2xConformanceProfile
HL7Version CDATA #REQUIRED
ProfileType (Implementation | Constrainable) #REQUIRED
Identiifer CDATA #IMPLIED
<!ELEMENT MetaData EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST MetaData
Name CDATA #REQUIRED
 OrgName CDATA #REQUIRED
 Version CDATA #IMPLIED
Status CDATA #IMPLIED
Topics CDATA #IMPLIED
<!ELEMENT UseCase (Purpose?, Description?, (Actor | PreCondition | PostCondition | EventFlow |
DerivedEvent)*)>
<!ELEMENT Purpose (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Actor (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST Actor
Name CDATA #REQUIRED
<!ELEMENT PreCondition (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST PreCondition
Name CDATA #REQUIRED
<!ELEMENT PostCondition (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST PostCondition
Name CDATA #REQUIRED
<!ELEMENT EventFlow (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST EventFlow
Name CDATA #REOUIRED
<!ELEMENT DerivedEvent (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST DerivedEvent
Name CDATA #REQUIRED
<!ELEMENT DynamicDef EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST DynamicDef
AccAck (AL | NE | SU | ER) "NE"
AppAck (AL | NE | SU | ER) "AL"
 MsgAckMode (Immediate | Deferred) "Deferred"
QueryMessageType (NonQuery | Query | Response | Publish) "NonQuery"
QueryMode (Batch | RealTime | Both) "RealTime"
<!ELEMENT Encoding (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Encodings (Encoding+)>
<!ELEMENT HL7v2xStaticDefRef EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST HL7v2xStaticDefRef
Identifier CDATA #REQUIRED
<!ELEMENT HL7v2xStaticDef (MetaData?, ImpNote?, Description?, Reference?, Segment, (SegGroup
Segment)+)>
```

```
<!ATTLIST HL7v2xStaticDef
 MsgType CDATA #REQUIRED
 EventType CDATA #REQUIRED
 MsgStructID CDATA #REQUIRED
 OrderControl CDATA #IMPLIED
 EventDesc CDATA #REQUIRED
 Identifier CDATA #IMPLIED
 Role (Sender | Receiver) "Sender"
<!ELEMENT SegGroup (ImpNote?, Description?, Reference?, Predicate?, (SegGroup | Segment)+)>
<!ATTLIST SeaGroup
 Name CDATA #REQUIRED
 LongName CDATA #REQUIRED
 Usage (%Usage;) #REQUIRED
 Min CDATA #REQUIRED
 Max CDATA #REQUIRED
<!ELEMENT Segment (ImpNote?, Description?, Reference?, Predicate?, Field+)>
<!ATTLIST Segment
 Name CDATA #REQUIRED
 LongName CDATA #IMPLIED
 Usage (%Usage;) #REQUIRED
 Min CDATA #REOUIRED
 Max CDATA #REQUIRED
<!ELEMENT Field (ImpNote?, Description?, Reference?, Predicate?, DataValues*, Component*)>
<!ATTLIST Field
 Name CDATA #REQUIRED
 Usage (%Usage;) #REQUIRED
 Min CDATA #REQUIRED
 Max CDATA #REQUIRED
 Datatype CDATA #REOUIRED
 Length CDATA #IMPLIED
 Table CDATA #IMPLIED
 ConstantValue CDATA #IMPLIED
 ItemNo CDATA #IMPLIED
<!ELEMENT Component (ImpNote?, Description?, Reference?, Predicate?, DataValues*, SubComponent*)>
<!ATTLIST Component
 Name CDATA #REQUIRED
 Usage (%Usage;) #REQUIRED
 Datatype CDATA #REQUIRED
 Length CDATA #IMPLIED
 Table CDATA #IMPLIED
 ConstantValue CDATA #IMPLIED
<!ELEMENT SubComponent (ImpNote?, Description?, Reference?, Predicate?, DataValues*)>
<!ATTLIST SubComponent
 Name CDATA #REQUIRED
 Usage (%Usage;) #REQUIRED
 Datatype CDATA #REQUIRED
 Length CDATA #IMPLIED
 Table CDATA #IMPLIED
 ConstantValue CDATA #IMPLIED
<!ELEMENT Description (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT ImpNote (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Predicate (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT Reference (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT DataValues EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST DataValues
 ExValue CDATA #IMPLIED
```

2.20 OUTSTANDING ISSUES

The following items are being discussed in the Control/Query technical committee for addition to future versions of HL7:

- 1) Rationalization and clarification of event structures.
- 2) Creation of a network server for HL7 tables so that updates to them can be made public immediately, rather than waiting until the publication of the next version of the Standard.
- 3) Consideration of security. There are in general two types: application level security, which is partially addressed by the security field in the MSH segment. The second type, network security, needs to be addressed in the HL7 Implementation Guide. There are several commercially available encryption-based approaches to network level security.
- 4) Reviewing network application management messages for possible upgrade requirements.
- 5) Conformance Based Queries use of the Message Profiles. Current status of this can be found on the Conformance SIG web site (http://www.hl7.org; from the Committees header, select the Technical Committees link, click the Special Interest Groups link in the Header, and click the Conformance link in the left-hand navigation).